St. Thomas's Seminary Library
3 0516 00764 6168

ST. THOMAS COLLEGE
LIBRARY
WITHDRAWN
UST
Libraries

MODERN ENGLISH

ITS GROWTH AND PRESENT USE

MODERN ENGLISH

ITS GROWTH AND PRESENT USE

BY

GEORGE PHILIP KRAPP, PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CINCINNATI
AUTHOR OF "THE ELEMENTS OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR"

ST. THOMAS COLLEGE
LIBRARY

CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

NEW YORK CHICAGO BOSTON ATLANTA
SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS

COPYRIGHT, 1909, BY
CHARLES SCRIBNER'S SONS

Printed in the United States of America

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without the permission of Charles Scribner's Sons

Q

PE
1075
K864

To

BRANDER MATTHEWS

MASTER OF MODERN ENGLISH

THIS VOLUME

IS INSCRIBED BY HIS FRIEND AND DEBTOR

THE AUTHOR

B M

Mar. 19, 1941

PREFACE

THIS book is not designed to do away with the necessity for using the dictionaries, grammars, and detailed histories of the English language, but to prepare the way for the more profitable and intelligent use of these books. The grammars and the dictionaries are the mines in which the crude materials, the natural resources, of the language are stored; the principles of development appearing in language, the opinions which men hold with respect to the use of language, these are the appliances and the machinery by means of which the riches of the dictionaries and encyclopedias of fact may be made available for effective command over language. Some of the more important of these principles and opinions it is the purpose of this book to present.

The generalizations here set forth are some of them the commonplaces of the historical study of language. For stating them again in his own way, the author does not feel that any apology is necessary. They are given as simply as possible for the advantage of those readers and students who wish to be informed as to the results of the modern scientific study of language, but who are not themselves professional linguists. The book is untechnical, but, the author hopes, not unscholarly. Attention is called in the brief bibliography at the end of the volume to representative works which may be

consulted by those who wish to enter into the subjects treated more fully than the limits of this volume permitted.

Perhaps fuller citations of literary authorities may be expected in discussions of points of divided use than have been given. In general, however, it does not seem to the author that the appeal to literary authority is the proper method of attack in examining disputed questions of speech, spoken or written, and that very little is gained by an elaborate assemblage of examples from literary sources to confirm or to disprove a point of present use. Where there is a real difference of practice — and this, it may be pointed out, is relatively infrequent — nine times out of ten it would be as easy to support one side as the other by the testimony of literary authority. Past literary use is only one of many tests that must be applied in determining present use. The reading of literary English should strengthen the habitual and unconscious feeling for expression by which one acquires a large, a sure, and a varied sense of the possible values of language. It should suggest what may be done with language by showing what has been done with it. Literary English, indeed, should be regarded in the same way as spoken English. Both are forms of expression which have to be reduced to natural and unconscious habit before they can be said to have been mastered. Now nothing hinders such mastery so much as a meticulous respect for the authority of literary practice. De Quincey once said that authors are a dangerous class for any language. He meant, of course, that the literary habit of mind is likely to prove dangerous for a language. It is likely to prove dangerous because it so often leads a speaker or writer

to distrust natural and unconscious habit, even when it is right, and to put in its stead some conscious theory of literary propriety. Such a tendency, however, is directly opposed to the true feeling for idiomatic English. It destroys the sense of security, the assurance of perfect congruity between thought and expression, which the unliterary and unacademic speaker and writer often has, and which, with both literary and unliterary, is the basis for all expressive use of language. The source of authority in deciding questions of propriety in form, questions which naturally arise less and less frequently as one acquires a sure sense of the expressive value of language, lies not in past use, but in what might be called future use, that is, in the effectiveness of the expression upon the minds of those who are to be the receivers of it. But enough — perhaps too much — has been said upon this subject in the body of the book, and it may be left here with the statement that altho good modern English derives much from traditional literary English, the final test of its goodness or its badness is to be found always in immediate and not in past use.

To the various excellent histories of the English language by Emerson, Lounsbury, Jespersen, Toller, and Bradley, as well as to more specialized studies and essays, the author gratefully acknowledges his general indebtedness. Wherever this indebtedness is specific, the endeavor has been to give the credit where it is due. Above all, the New English Dictionary has been constantly and unfailingly helpful. This work really holds the mirror up to nature. It does not use the language of the imagination, but it is an amazing record of the workings of the imagination. One who wishes to know

the English language cannot do better than give his days and his nights to the study of the New English Dictionary. To those friends who have discussed with him the ideas which the volume contains, the author acknowledges an indebtedness not compensated by this formal recognition. Among these friendly disputants he would mention in particular Prof. A. H. Thorndike, of Columbia University, Mr. J. G. Bowman, Secretary of the Carnegie Foundation, and Mr. C. M. Baker, Headmaster of Latin in the Horace Mann School.

G. P. K.

The University of Cincinnati
June, 1909

CONTENTS

		Page
I	Introduction	3
II	The English People	15
III	The English Language	44
IV	English Inflections	56
V	English Sounds	99
VI	English Words	183
VII	English Grammar	286
VIII	Conclusion	325

APPENDIX

The Old English Chronicle, fol. 1[a]. The Pardoner's Tale, fol. 306[a]. The First Folio of Shakspere. Lycidas, ll. 165–193 335

Bibliography 343

Index of Subjects 349

Index of Words 353

ILLUSTRATIONS

The Old English Chronicle, Laud MS. 636, fol. 1[a] . . 25

Chaucer's Pardoner's Tale, Cambridge Univ. MS. G. G. 4. 27, fol. 306 81

Shakspere, First Folio, Merchant of Venice, IV, 1, 119–152 161

Autograph of Milton's Lycidas, ll. 165–193 307

MODERN ENGLISH

MODERN ENGLISH

I

INTRODUCTION

1. **History and Politics.** History, according to the saying of a distinguished modern historian, is past politics. To the contemporary observer, the practical measures supported and opposed by the various rival political parties seem of only passing significance because they arise out of the immediate daily problems and needs of actual life. When these same measures, however, are viewed in the perspective of years, they are seen then not to be independent and unrelated. More or less unconsciously to themselves, the practical politicians help or retard certain large principles of development in the life of a people. Present politics is history in the making.

2. **The History of Language.** In the same way the history of a language is merely the record of the practical every-day speech of successive generations. Every person who speaks or writes a language, who hands on from one speaker to another any of the traditions of the language is, in so far, a factor in the historical growth of the language. And the whole history of the language is made up of the sum of the individual acts of all those who in past times have used the language in response

to the immediate practical needs of life. Just as politics is history in the making, so present, every-day speech and writing is the history of the language in the making.

Another conclusion of the modern political historians is applicable to the history of language. It is a very general opinion among historians that the justification of the study of the history of past periods is to be found in the application of the results of such study to the conditions of present life. Man learns to know himself better, to conduct the affairs of his public and private life better, from having observed the consequences of the actions of men in other days. So also by the study of the history of his speech he learns to adjust himself more wisely to the conditions of present speech. He learns that contemporary speech is not, on the one hand, a chaos of individual instances, nor is it, on the other, governed according to the decrees of a rigid, theoretical system. He perceives that it is a living thing, and that the principles which it illustrates in its growth have all the flexibility and variety of life. To enable a speaker or writer to realize this spirit, or life, of his own present speech is one of the main ends of the historical study of language.

3. **The Function of Language.** The effort to understand this spirit, to find out what the tendencies of one's native speech are, good and bad, is beset with many difficulties. The uncertainty of the bearing of present events always makes difference of opinion possible. If we knew exactly the future significance of an action, whether in politics, in personal conduct, or in speech, we should doubtless all hold the same opinion with respect

to that action. But the future does not so easily yield up its secrets, and our only guides are inferences drawn from the observation of the past and the present. There is always one ground of inference, however, which offers a firm foothold. Our opinions with respect to an action are naturally determined by the value of that action in attaining the end towards which the actor is striving. Our attitude towards any question of language should consequently be determined by the purpose and the function of language, just as the value of any political action is determined by its serving or not serving the purpose for which the state exists. What, then, is the function of language? Briefly answered, language is a form of social custom and its function is the expression of social ideas. Language as social custom means that it has been slowly developed by mankind in the social relations of men to each other. It is closely paralleled in its development by other kinds of social custom. The laws governing rights of property, of individual liberty, of self-defense, the moral laws, such as those directed against lying, deception, and insincerity, the rules of conduct in minor matters, such as have to do with behavior and good breeding, — all these have grown up as the result of the intercourse of man with man in social life. The habits, or the rules, of such intercourse, through a long succession of generations have fixed themselves in the life of the people as their social customs. Whether they are reduced to writing, as is generally the case with criminal law, or are merely held as the traditional rules of conduct of a people, they are always in their origins the customary rules of action which have arisen out of the practical

exigencies of one man's trying to live on terms of social understanding with another.

4. **Speech as Social Custom.** The special function of speech as social custom is the expression of social ideas. If men are to live with each other, if they are not to be like stocks and stones, then they must have some means of conveying to each other their needs, their desires, their ideas, their aspirations. This they might do by various means. So long as the ideas were simple and primitive, they might be conveyed by very crude means. A brandished club might serve to indicate one's sense of the right of possession in a piece of disputed property. But it is one of the characteristics of man as man that the ideas which he wishes to convey to his fellow-men have not remained thus simple and crude. The social intercourse of men has become extremely complex, both emotionally and intellectually, and, corresponding to this complexity, there has been an equal growth in the variety and the subtlety of the customs of speech. Out of the practical needs of communication has arisen the vast fabric of human language. Manifestly, then, the best language being that which most adequately realizes the function of language, that is the best which enables men to express themselves most fully and satisfactorily in their relations to each other. This is the ideal towards which language strives. In the animal world we speak of degeneration when certain functions of the organism necessary to the preservation of its life and the existence of its species become weakened. In the same way we may speak of degeneration in a language when it changes in such a way that it becomes less capable of

performing the functions for which language exists; and, on the other hand, we may speak of growth and improvement in language as it becomes more and more effective in enabling men to understand each other.

5. **The Speech of a Democracy.** The necessity of realizing in an ever-increasing degree this ideal function of language is one that is peculiarly incumbent upon a democracy. The best national speech for a democracy is that which enables it to be most fully self-expressive. It is in itself that the fate of a democracy lies. From its own members must emanate all its laws, its ideals of conduct, of whatever nature. It must have confidence in the value of its united opinion; and its prime duty consists in such a free and liberal exchange of ideas that there shall be a united opinion. A democracy which is not self-expressive and self-determining is not a real democracy. Anything in speech, therefore, which prevents the democratic nation from realizing itself as a self-determining body is harmful. Thus the national speech of a democracy cannot be sectional; if there is not one uniform speech acceptable to the whole nation, then the speech of one region must have equal authority with that of another. The speech of a democracy cannot be a class speech; it cannot be a traditional literary speech, the so-called "best English" of a special limited academic or literary class. Its roots must go deeper. They must strike down into the region of the practical daily life of the citizens whose vote and whose opinion make the country what it is. If it is to have any enduring vitality it must rest upon the basis of national custom where national custom is made. The duty of making these customs sound and good is one that rests

on all alike. The welfare of the speech of a democracy can no more be left in the hands of a few preservers or regulators than its political government can be left in the hands of a few self-appointed directors or dictators. In both a diffused intelligence is the prime requisite to a healthy national life.

6. **Speech and Education.** The obstacles that stand in the way of the realization of the ideal of a democratic speech are confessedly numerous and great. It is difficult, in the first place, to determine just how much value should be ascribed to tradition. Old ways are not good merely because they are old; and of course the same can be said of new ways. It is a fair conservative assumption, however, that what has served man's purpose in the past will continue to serve it best in the present, until changed conditions demand new ways. But again one must take heed not to be so blinded by old customs as not to perceive when the conditions actually are changed. In the second place, democracy works from the bottom up, and not from the top down. Consequently, popular education when it is diffused over the whole body of society, as society is at present constituted, is likely to be a somewhat thin and inadequate kind of education. It thus happens that there are people who rest content with very imperfect education, who take the dry husks of the mere rudiments of education for the reality itself. We find persons who think that the secret of good English consists merely in expressing themselves in a certain prescribed way, in using a certain intonation of voice or a certain quality of vowel sound when they speak, or one form of phrasing, or even of spelling, rather

than another, when they write. They fail to realize that the conventional customs of speaking and writing, important as the knowledge of them is, are nevertheless the mere preliminaries, the elementary mechanics, of a good use of language. English which is merely correct cannot claim very high praise. Going a little lower in the scale of intelligence, we may find that a man who has come from generations of ancestors who could not write, is likely to think that the simple ability to write is the pinnacle of education. But for him perhaps it is; and all that democratic education can offer to any large body of people in different stages of development is the opportunity for each to realize what at a given moment is the highest and best thing for him to do. The general level cannot be raised by a single act, or by the acts of a few, but only by the sum of all the acts of the people who make up the whole. In spite, therefore, of the low ideals of certain members of the body politic, it must always remain the hope of a democracy that the average plane of its life will rise higher and higher from generation to generation. And so long as the life of the people remains vigorous, so long as their minds and their wills are energetic and stirring, this will remain a well-founded hope.

7. **The Best Tendency in Speech**. In speech, therefore, the ideal attitude of mind is that which leads the speaker to unite himself to those customs and tendencies which, in his opinion, make for the welfare of the national idiom in the most effective manner. If speech arises, as we have said, out of the immediate social relations of man with man, it will be seen that therein lies

the final test of its value. It will be seen, also, that those tendencies of speech with which a speaker or writer wishes to unite himself are merely manifestations of general social tendencies. Shall our ideal social tendency be one that makes for exclusiveness, for the development of limited class distinctions? Or shall it be a broader and more liberal tendency, one that is democratic and generously inclusive? In speech shall we endeavor to cultivate refined and more or less arbitrary distinctions which shall enable us to make a strict division between conventional and literary English, on the one hand, and what may be called natural and self-determining English on the other? Is the best English that which is acquired by learning and following an external rule, or is it the English which is acquired by following social custom, the best, as each views it, and as each is brought into contact with it, in the actual processes of living, speaking, and writing? These are some of the questions which each of us must answer for himself. Necessarily every speaker and every writer must follow some tendency of the speech of the community, whether this be conscious or unconscious. Every one of us is always following, at the same time that he is helping to make, custom. In what direction shall we throw our influence? Before we can answer this question we must have some knowledge of the conflicting customs and tendencies of our speech, and as this knowledge grows in breadth and certainty, the answer to the question will become, according to our sympathies, correspondingly easy and unhesitating.

8. **Literary and Spoken Language.** In all study of language as expression, it is now generally conceded

by those who have given much thought to the matter, that the spoken, as compared with the written or literary language, is of far the greater importance. It is mainly in the speech of men and women as they come into direct social relations with each other that language develops and grows in a natural, untrammeled, and effective way. The language of literature is merely an approximate transcription, more or less remote, of the language of speech. It is from the latter that the language of literature is derived, and it must always return to its source to renew itself when, as it constantly tends to do, it becomes attenuated and outworn. This being granted, it readily follows that it is speech which we should study, not only for effectiveness in conversation, but also for effectiveness in literature. The popular opinion is not usually in accord with this statement. It is often believed that the language of literature is something different from and better than the language of speech. This latter, being the common possession of all, is looked down upon as something ignoble, or at least not admirable. Because it is familiar, it is regarded as contemptible. It is supposed that the ability to use the English of literature is a special and acquired accomplishment, and that one learns the language of literature as one learns a new art, like playing the piano or painting. Being a special and higher accomplishment, the language of literature is thus often regarded as furnishing the model for the language of speech, and the theory is held that the latter should be made to conform as fully as possible to the former. One need only "talk like a book" to realize the absurdity of such a belief. On the other hand it is no credit to the language of lit

erature to read like a book. Literary language which is bookish we do not regard as admirable; on the contrary, when we want to praise an author's style, we rather say that it is true, natural, real. The fact is that literature endeavors merely to transcribe life, to give in the permanent form of words and sentences the passing experiences, thoughts, and emotions of men. According as it does this the more directly and truly, the greater literature it is. There is no need to prove that language is one of the most characteristic expressions of human life. It is as speaking beings that men think of themselves. The writer, therefore, who wishes to transcribe human life, must transcribe it in the forms of speech in which it finds its most immediate expression. His task is parallel to that of the artist. When a portrait painter wishes to paint a portrait, he must study the features of the human face and the lines of the human figure; when a landscape painter wishes to transfer to canvas his impressions of sea or land, he must go into the open and study clouds, trees, and atmosphere. Both are said to follow nature, because it is their impressions of the reality in nature which they endeavor to record. In the same way the literary artist must follow nature, not only by studying the inner moods and actuating motives of men, but also the ways in which these moods and motives find their most natural and effective expression. It is true, of course, that literary language has customs and conventions, for example, meter in poetry, which are peculiar to itself. In the same way painting has certain devices, tricks of method, which in themselves are untrue to nature, but which are used because to the beholder they produce or heighten the effects of nature

The painter's concern is to cause the illusion of nature, since he cannot actually create the counterpart to nature. So also the literary artist attempts to produce the illusion of reality in language. All that is appropriate to speech is consequently not necessarily appropriate to all forms of literature, and, on the other hand, some things are appropriate to certain kinds of literature which are not appropriate to speech. But whenever the customs and conventions of literature become so peculiar to it that they are purely literary, or academic, as we say, when they produce the effect of being untrue to, or remote from, nature, then they are appropriate neither to the literary nor to any other language. It is to the natural, spoken language that we make our final appeal. And it is interesting to observe that just those periods of English literature have been greatest in which the language of literature stood nearest to the language of speech. Chaucer's literary style became more and more natural as he grew older, until in the *Canterbury Tales*, his latest work, we almost think we hear his characters speak. The language of Shakspere is the language of the drama, and whatever conventions the language of the drama may have, its prime requisite is that it shall be true to life. The poets of a third great period of English literature, beginning with Wordsworth and Coleridge, made the imitation of the simple speech of daily life their first principle. Their art on the side of language consists largely in a return to nature as exemplified in speech. What is true of English, is true of literature generally. Students of Greek tell us that much of the charm of Greek literature consists in the intimate dependence of the language

of literature upon the language of speech ; Greek literary style is not a special caste language for literary purposes, but rather an extension of the spoken language to written uses. Molière, the only Frenchman worthy to rank as the fellow of Shakspere, owes much of his power to the naturalness of his style. Hating as he did hypocrisy and affectation in every form, we should expect to find him natural and real in his writing. In short it is a false standard of value to assume that the test of highest excellence is to be found only in printed and written words. These are merely makeshifts and substitutes for the reality. They serve, to be sure, a very important purpose. For one thing, they preserve what otherwise might become lost if intrusted only to oral transmission. They perform a tremendous service to humanity also by extending the bounds of individual experience. In a library of books we can commune at will with the spirits of all ages and all places. Indeed the ability to write is so highly regarded by mankind that perhaps no other kind of fame is so generally and so eagerly desired as literary fame. Yet this glory should not blind one to the fact that literature is not self-producing, but grows out of nature. The aspirant for literary fame must not only know letters, above all he must know life. If he wishes to write for his age, he must know how the men of his age speak. He must not expend all his energy and admiration upon books, but must turn to that form of the language which, above the language of books, is the most wonderful, the most dignified, and the most worthy of respect, the flexible, subtle speech of men in the infinite relations of human life.

II

THE ENGLISH PEOPLE

1. **Speech and Race.** The English language is one of the most widely distributed languages of the modern world. Centered originally in the little kingdom of England, the speech has spread to all the four corners of the globe. It has become the speech of two of the most powerful nations of modern times, and is now the speech of the most numerous civilized people of the world. In the course of its history, it has imposed itself upon peoples originally speaking many different languages and originally of very diverse racial origins; and altho each new body thus incorporated has affected the whole, the stock of the language has remained essentially the same to the present day. It shall be our first task to take a survey of the history of the English language from this ethnological or racial point of view.

2. **Celtic Britain.** In the first century before Christ, when the island of Great Britain first became well known to the Romans, who were then the most powerful as well as the most highly civilized nation of Europe, it was occupied by a race of Celtic people, speaking a Celtic language. This race had been preceded in Britain by various different, prehistoric races concerning which little is known; it was one of these prehistoric races, however, which reared the great monoliths at Stonehenge on Salisbury Plain. The

Celtic inhabitants of the island called themselves Britons, and from this name of the people the country was called Britannia by the Romans, whence is derived our modern Britain. The Celts of Britain were merely a branch of a greater Celtic people which then dwelt in Gaul and in Spain, the Celts of Gaul being the predecessors of the Franks, a Teutonic people from whom the country derived its modern name of France. On the Continent the Celts have been almost completely absorbed by the Roman and Teutonic conquerors of their countries. But in England to this day they have maintained a more or less separate existence, and their speech still survives in the Gaelic of the Highlands of Scotland, the Welsh of Wales, and also in the Irish of Ireland. Until comparatively recent times a Celtic speech was also spoken in Cornwall.

3. **The Roman Invasions.** The first military invasion which the Romans, the world conquerors, made against the Celts of Britain, was in the years 55 and 54 B. C., under the leadership of Julius Cæsar. This was more in the nature of an excursion from Gaul, however, where Cæsar was then campaigning,[1] than a settled attempt to conquer the country. The serious conquest of Britain was not undertaken until about a century later, A. D. 42, under the Emperor Claudius; and about the year A. D. 80 the country was organized as a Roman province, under the command of the Roman general Agricola. The portions of the country occupied by the Romans were chiefly those central, southern, and eastern parts which later became the kingdom of England. The mountainous regions of Wales in the

[1] See *Gallic War*, Books IV and V.

West and of Scotland in the North were sought out as a place of refuge by the Celts who had been driven out of the more fertile regions of the lowlands. In these fastnesses they maintained an independent and hostile existence. As a protection against Celtic invasions from the north the Emperor Hadrian (A. D. 120) built a wall, parts of which are still standing, between the Firth of Solway and the mouth of the river Tyne. A second wall was later built by Antoninus Pius, extending from the Firth of Clyde to the Firth of Forth; and still later these walls were further extended by the Emperor Severus, who came to Britain in the year 208. In the protected regions the Roman civilization in Britain was prosperous and highly developed. The ground was cultivated, and sheep and cattle were raised. The mines of Cornwall and of Northumberland were worked and an extensive commerce with the Continent was carried on. The Romans built houses, temples, theaters, altars, and baths after the style of the buildings of their home country, and ruins and relics of these houses that have been preserved to modern times show that some of them must have been very luxurious. They built also highways (as for example Watling Street, extending the whole breadth of England from Canterbury to Chester), some parts of which are in use to this day. Our word "street," derived from Latin *strata*, in the phrase *strata via*, "paved way," was borrowed from the Roman soldiers, both on the Continent and in Britain. These highways were built, in accordance with the usual policy of the Romans, as military roads to facilitate the passage of troops from one section of the country to another. Walled cities were also established at various advantageous points in

Britain, and many of these have likewise lasted to modern times, some of them still preserving parts of the old Roman defenses. They were called *castra*, and this word, in its modified forms, appears in the names *Chester*, *Winchester*, *Doncaster*, *Gloucester*, *Worcester*, *Exeter* (in Anglo-Saxon times known as *Exanceaster*), and in many other names of towns and places. The language which was spoken by the Romans in Britain was the Latin language in a popular or colloquial form, being the ordinary language of the soldiers and merchants who constituted the larger part of the population. It was the same language as that spoken in Gaul by the Roman conquerors of that country, and if the Romans in England had continued in uninterrupted residence, as they did in Gaul, it is quite probable that the language of Great Britain to-day would be a Romance speech instead of English.

The Roman occupation of Britain, however, came to a sudden end. In the fourth and fifth centuries A. D., the pressure of the northern tribes upon Italy and Rome began to make itself felt, and Rome was compelled to strengthen her home defenses. To do this it was necessary to call in certain of the legions that were stationed in the provinces, and naturally the most distant were the first thus to be given up. In the year 407 the greater part of the Roman soldiery left Britain; in the year 410 the last Roman legion was withdrawn, and the Emperor Honorius sent a letter to the people of Britain in which he told them to take charge of their own defense. Since the Roman civilization in Britain had been altogether military in character, the withdrawal of the legions immediately prepared the way for the breaking

down of the whole Roman system of government and for the next important and dramatic episode in the history of the island, the coming of the English.

4. **The Anglo-Saxon Conquest.** Besides their hereditary enemies, the Celts of the mountainous regions of Wales and Scotland, the Romans in Britain had had another foe to contend with. These were certain Germanic Saxon tribes who were in the habit of crossing over from north Germany and ravaging the eastern coast of Britain, known as the Saxon Shore because it was exposed to the attacks of the Saxons. While the Roman soldiers were still stationed in Britain these predatory bands of warriors could be easily held in check. With the departure of the legions, however, the state of affairs was altered. The Celts of the highlands, finding that the defenses of the country had been weakened by the withdrawal of the Roman soldiery, swarmed down from their rocky fastnesses, and immediately began the task of regaining their ancestral kingdoms. It is probable that the Roman citizens left behind in the towns after the departure of the legions were an unwarlike population. The defense of the country had so long been left in the hands of a professional military class that when this class was removed there were none left trained in the arts of war to take its place. At any rate the inhabitants of the Roman towns and the dwellers in the Roman villas were no match for the rude and warlike Celts. They were thus placed between two fires, the Celts on the one side and the marauding Germanic tribes on the other. Thinking to seize the more favorable horn of the dilemma, they turned to the Germanic invaders and asked them to come over and help them subdue their

enemies. In response to this invitation, extended by Vortigern, king of the Roman Britons, tradition tells us that two Saxon chiefs, Hengest and Horsa, with their followers, landed on the island of Thanet, on the coast of Kent, in the year 449. True to their compact they first aided the Roman Britons to drive back the Celts, but the story goes that, observing the weakness of their allies and the richness of the land, they sent word back to their countrymen at home that they should come over and assist them, that they might together possess the land. The warriors who came in response to this request were of three tribes of north Germans, the Angles, who lived in the region of modern Holstein, the Jutes, who lived in the region of modern Jutland, and the Saxons, who lived in the region of modern Schleswig. The story of the conflict between these Teutonic tribes and the Roman Britons, with whom the Celts now became united against the common foe, has been but imperfectly reported by history. We know that the struggle was stubborn, but it is plain that the Britons were unable to stand out against their barbarous foemen. Battle after battle was fought, but always with the result that the Britons were driven further inland and up into the mountainous regions to which the Romans several centuries before had driven the original Celts. Later tradition has developed in great detail the story of King Arthur, the heroic leader of the Britons, and of his twelve great battles against the Teutonic heathen. But there are no authentic records of these twelve battles, or of King Arthur, that would enable us to build up a connected story of the events. All we know is that out of the welter and confusion of these

wars, a new Teutonic England, consisting at first of a number of separate kingdoms, arose from the ruins of the old Celtic and Roman Britain. The first Anglo-Saxon kingdom to be founded was that of Kent. In 519 occurs the first mention of a West Saxon kingdom, and 547 is the date of the first Northumbrian king. By the middle of the sixth century, therefore, we may say that the Saxon conquest of Britain was complete. This does not mean that the whole island was under Saxon control, for Wales and Scotland were still Celtic, as they had been all through the period of Roman occupation. From their retreats in the mountains the Celts continued to make frequent forays into the Saxon country, and the story of the complete reduction of Celtic Britain would carry us far down into modern times.

The three tribes who had thus become masters of the fairest part of the island of Britain, settled each in a separate region. The Jutes, who were the smallest of the three tribes, settled in Kent and the Isle of Wight. The Angles settled the regions north of the Thames to the Firth of Forth, exclusive of the region immediately north of the mouth of the Thames. The two main kingdoms of the Angles were Northumbria and Mercia. As the most numerous and best organized of the tribes and the one in which a literature was first developed, the Angles in time gave the name to the whole country, *Englaland*, "land of the Angles," and to the speech, *Englisc*, "English," or "the English speech." The Saxons settled the regions south of the Thames, excepting those parts occupied by the Jutes, and the region just north of the mouth of that river. The chief

Saxon kingdoms were Wessex, the kingdom of the West Saxons; Essex, the kingdom of the East Saxons; Sussex, the kingdom of the South Saxons; and Middlesex, the kingdom of the Middle Saxons. For a long time these various Anglian, Jutish, and Saxon kingdoms maintained separate existences. They were first united into a loose sort of confederation by Egbert, who came to the throne of Wessex in the year 802, but it was not until the beginning of the tenth century that the union became complete and lasting. This united people, as has been stated, called itself the English people. They are also known by the name Anglo-Saxons, a composite name made up of the two most important tribes that united to form the nation; this name, however, is an invention of scholars and historians of later times, and altho it is a convenient descriptive name, it should be remembered that the Anglo-Saxons in their own period called themselves English and their country England.[1] To bring out the fact of the direct sequence of the later periods of English history after the earlier, it is often convenient to speak of the Anglo-Saxon period as the Old English period, and of the language of the time as Old English. This terminology thus runs parallel to the succeeding Middle English and Modern English periods.

[1] The words *England, English* are pronounced as though they were written *Ingland, Inglish*. As a matter of fact in earlier periods they were often so written, the pronunciation being then in accord with the spelling. In Anglo-Saxon the words were written *Englaland, Englisc*, and were pronounced as written. But the vowel *e* before *ng* changes regularly in Middle English to *i*, Anglo-Saxon *strenge*, for example, becoming "string." Thus *England, English* became *Ingland, Inglish* and were so written for a time. Later this phonetic spelling was "reformed" to agree with the original Anglo-Saxon spelling, *Eng-*, altho the pronunciation has remained *Ing*. These two words are the only ones in English in which the combination *eng* is pronounced *ing*.

5. **The Civilization of the Anglo-Saxons.** At the time of their arrival in England the Anglo-Saxons were a heathen people, worshipping the gods Thor and Woden, and the many other divinities of the Teutonic mythology and religion. They were seamen and warriors, and gained a large part of their livelihood, like the Danes of a later period, by making plundering expeditions upon the coasts of neighboring countries. With their settlement in England, however, a great change came over this wild and barbarous people. Having now a rich and fertile land in their possession, they were no longer impelled to live by robbery and violence, but settled down to the peaceful occupations of farming and raising sheep and cattle. They soon became rich, and with this increase in wealth naturally came a greater development of the arts and of the more humane aspects of life. The greatest civilizing influence, however, to which they were subjected was that of Christianity, introduced to them by the Roman missionary Augustine, and his assistants, in the year 597. The response to Augustine's preaching was immediate and enthusiastic, and in a short time the whole of Anglo-Saxon England became Christian. Gradually, also, the newcomers worked out a political system, and from being a disconnected group of tribal kingdoms or states, they became, in the time of Alfred and his successors, a nation in the true sense of the word, with one king and a strongly centralized government to hold them together. Their speech was, of course, Germanic, and it was closely related to that spoken in Germany and other parts of northern Europe (see pp. 46–50). In course of time this speech also became the vehicle for literary expression, both in verse

and in prose. As is almost always true of the beginnings of a national literature, Old English poetry preceded prose. As early as the beginning of the seventh century Old English poetry was probably composed and written down in England, altho all the manuscripts which have been preserved to modern times are copies which date from a period considerably later. Most of this poetry is highly traditional in character; for altho the Anglo-Saxons by this time had generally turned to quiet agricultural and pastoral pursuits, their poetry nevertheless is very warlike in tone; and altho they had long since ceased to follow the water extensively, the sea, its dangers and its attractions, is one of their most frequent poetic themes. This is true not only of their native heroic poetry, as for example the great epic poem *Beowulf*, which is the most important literary monument of the Old English period that has come down to us, but also of the later poetry of the school of Cædmon, written about the middle of the seventh century, and of the school of Cynewulf, written about the middle of the eighth century, which is strongly under Christian influence and the subject matter of which is Christian story and legend. This poetry also is cast in the old epic warlike mould of the earlier native verse. The explanation of this is to be found in the fact that all Old English poetry is popular in its origins — that is, it goes back to the early warlike periods of the race when poetry was handed down by oral tradition from minstrel to minstrel. And as poetry is always very conservative, it is natural that when the period of written literature began the old poetic traditions and conventions should be preserved by the side of much that was new. The

Brittene igland is ehta hund mila lang.
⁊ tpa hund brad. ⁊ her rind on þis
iglande fif ge þeode. englisc ⁊ brit
tirc. ⁊ pilrc. ⁊ reyttirc. ⁊ pýhtirc. ⁊
boc leden. Erest þeron bugend þiser
lander britter. þa coman of armenia. ⁊ ge ræran
ruðeþearde brýttene ærost. Þa ge lamp hit þ̄ pýh
tar coman ruþan of reithian. mid langū scipū
na manegum. ⁊ þa coman ærost on norþ ýbermān
up. ⁊ þær bædo scottar þ̄ hi ðer moston punian. ac
hi noldan heom lýfan. forðan hi cpædon þa scottar.
þe eop magon þeah hpaðere ræd ge læron. Þe pitan
oþer egland her be easton. þer ge magon eardian gif
ge pollað. ⁊ gif hpa eop þið stent. þe eop fultumiad. þ̄
ge hit magon ge gangan. Da ferdon þa pihtar. ⁊ ge
ferdon þir land norþan peard. ⁊ ruþan peard hit hef
don brittas. spa þe ær cpedon. And þa pýhtas heom abæ
don þif æt scottum. on þa ge rad þ̄ hi ge curon heor
kýne eim̄ aā on þa þif healfa. þ̄ hi heoldon spa lange
sýdðan. ⁊ þa ge lamp hit imbe geara rina. þ̄ scotta
sum dæl ge þat of ýbernian on brittene. ⁊ þer lan-
der sum dæl ge eodon. ⁊ þes heora heratoga reoda ge
haten. from þā heo rind ge nemnode dæl reodi. Sixti-
gum þintrū ær þā þe crist þere acenned. gaiꝰ iuliꝰ
romana karere mid hund ehtatigū scipū ge rohte
brýtene. Þer he þes ærost ge spenced mid grimmum
ge feohte. ⁊ micelne dæl his heres forlædde. ⁊ þa he

THE OLD ENGLISH CHRONICLE
From the Bodleian manuscript, Laud 636.
(For description, see Appendix.)

great body of Old English poetry is preserved in three volumes, or codexes, of miscellaneous content, Manuscript Junius XI in the Bodleian Library at Oxford; the Vercelli Book, found in the year 1822 in an out-of-the-way library at Vercelli, Italy, where it is still preserved; and the Exeter Book, the property of Exeter Cathedral in England.

Old English prose, on the other hand, the body of which was not written until the ninth century and later, is completely under the dominance of the new order of thought. There is nothing primitive and traditional about the prose, but, on the contrary, it is all distinctly Christian in tone and, for its period, very modern. It consists mainly of historical, philosophical, and religious or exegetical writings, and centers chiefly about the name of Alfred, who died in 901, and of Ælfric, who died near the close of the Old English period about the year 1020. One of the most important prose documents is the Old English *Chronicle*, the earliest attempt at the consecutive writing of history in the English tongue. It was probably compiled under the direction of King Alfred about the middle of the ninth century, but it was continued in various forms by later hands, the Laud version, of which the opening is here reproduced, coming down as late as the middle of the twelfth century.

On the whole one must say that between the arrival of Hengest and Horsa in 449 and the close of the Old English period with the coming of William the Conqueror in 1066, the Anglo-Saxons had developed a relatively high civilization. They were well governed, they had an enlightened religion, they cultivated learn-

ing and letters. In some of the arts, for example the making of enameled jewelry, they were famous, and the embroidery of ecclesiastical garments done by the Anglo-Saxon women had even a Continental reputation. The people lived in comfort and often in luxury, some of the satires of the times showing that then, as always, extravagance in dress and the table accompanied prosperity. One must not think, therefore, of the Old English period as barbarous and uncivilized. It was indeed the period of the beginnings of English speech and English literature, but even in their beginnings our language and literature afford much that may and should be studied, not only for its historical interest, but also for its intrinsic wisdom and beauty.

6. **The Danish Invasions and the Danish Conquest**. In the midst of their peaceful development, however, the Anglo-Saxons were called upon to meet a great danger. History repeated itself; for just as the weakened Britons several centuries before had yielded to the attacks of the Jutes, Angles, and Saxons, so now these latter, also weakened by the refining influences of civilization and by the gradual decay of their warlike habits, were compelled to meet the advances of certain kinsmen of theirs from the Continent, the Danes. The method of the Danish invasions was practically the same as that of the original Anglo-Saxon invasion. They first came on marauding expeditions, returning each time to their own country. About the year 850, however, they began a campaign of conquest and settlement, and, in a short time, they gained control of all England except the little kingdom of Wessex, south of the Thames, which was held and defended by the heroic Alfred. After

Alfred's death in 901 his son and successor Edward, and after Edward, Alfred's grandson Æthelstan, succeeded in winning back the greater part of England from the Danes. But this success was only temporary, for, in the reign of Æthelred the Unready (978–1016), the Danes and Northmen came over to England in ever-increasing numbers and gained possession of the entire land.

In the year 1017 Cnut became king of England, and a Danish king occupied both the English and Danish throne at the same time. Cnut was succeeded by his son Hardacnut (1039-1042), and Hardacnut was succeeded by Edward the Confessor (1042-1066), in whose long and peaceful reign the Dane and Anglo-Saxon in England became fused into one people. Closely related in blood and speaking languages which had a great deal in common, the two peoples, the conquered and the conquerors, readily united. With that remarkable vitality which has always characterized it, the Anglo-Saxon language succeeded in crowding out the Danish, and tho modified in some respects by the influences to which they had been subjected, it was an English language and an English people that arose again out of the Danish Conquest.

7. **The Norman Conquest.** After the coming of the Anglo-Saxons to Britain in the fifth century, undoubtedly the event most far-reaching in its later effect upon the speech and the institutions of the people who inhabited the island was the Norman Conquest under William the Conqueror in 1066. The Danish Conquest had not been without its effect; but owing to the close relationship in blood and speech that existed between the

Anglo-Saxons and the Danes, and the consequent ease with which they fused into one people, the Danish addition to the English population may be regarded rather as strengthening the original stock than changing it or turning it in new directions. The Norman Conquest, however, was entirely different; for it not only succeeded after a time in imposing a new social and political system upon the English people, but even in putting the English language in the second place temporarily and in profoundly affecting it permanently. The Normans who came to England in the train of William spoke Norman French, a dialect of the French language spoken in the province of Normandy. By birth and descent, however, they were not primarily Franks, but were nearly related to those Teutonic Danish and Scandinavian tribes who, in the reign of Æthelred, had become masters of England. The name Norman is merely a contraction of Northman, and the Normans were Scandinavian seafarers who had settled in northern France just as, and at the same time that, the Danes and Northmen were settling in England. Like their kinsmen in England, the Northmen in France gave up their native speech, and as the former had accepted English, so they accepted French. We have, therefore, the curious spectacle of a people of the same blood producing all the effect of a foreign race upon their kinsmen, merely because of a difference in language — a striking illustration of the fact that speech is thicker than blood. But it should be remembered that with the French language the Normans had imbibed all the ideas and ways of thinking of the French, and consequently had become as much French as the Franks themselves.

The first effect of the Conquest upon England was to place Normans in the positions of authority in the country, and thus to make French the language of the court and the ruling classes. But there is no indication that William or any of his successors attempted to coerce the native English-speaking population into using French, and at first the growth of the Norman French influence upon English was very slow. There is every reason to believe that if the relations between France and England had ceased with the Conquest, it would have been but a short time before the Norman French were as completely fused with the English as the Danes had become. But the Norman French influence upon English, altho it was at first slow, was increasing. French was not forced upon the English by any edict of law, but its use was encouraged by an even more powerful force, social custom. As the language of the ruling class, French came to be regarded as the polite and cultivated language. Instruction was, after a time, no longer given in English, but those who studied at all, studied French, and, if any other language, Latin. Even when Normandy was lost to England in the year 1204, and later when, in the middle of the century, the separation between the two countries became more complete by the decrees of King Louis IX of France and Henry III of England, the latter prohibiting Englishmen from holding estates in Normandy, and the former prohibiting Normans from holding estates in England, the cultivation of French continued. In spite of these decrees, there must have been a continual freshening of the stream of influence by the passing back and forth of Frenchmen, not only Normans but Frenchmen of other parts of France, to and

from England. The ties of blood could not be disregarded, even tho political conditions had changed. Another main reason for the increasing influence of French upon English is to be found in the way in which Englishmen themselves came to regard French. The great body of Englishmen, the plain people who were little influenced by questions of fashion or education, never spoke anything but English. In the middle and the higher social, literary, and educational life, however, French acquired a special distinction. As the language of the ruling class its authority was naturally great. It was, moreover, commonly regarded as the politest language of Europe. The University of Paris, founded about 1170, was a place of resort for the scholars of all Europe. In the French language was written a great and growing literature, which other nations, the English especially, strove to imitate and absorb. It was the language also of polite intercourse, and the French capital was regarded not only as the seat of learning and of letters but also of refinement. There grew up thus in England a sort of Gallomania, as it may be called, a sense of respect and admiration for everything French because it was French. The height of this fashion was not reached until between the years 1300 and 1350, but it is this fashionable fad more than anything else that accounts for the powerful influence of French, in this early period, upon English. The French which was imitated in the fourteenth century was of course no longer Norman French, but the French of Paris. For it English was even in danger for a time of being given up altogether as the language of literature and polite conversation. Those who continued to use English strove often

to make it as near like French as possible. The imitation consisted in the borrowing of words and phrases, in the adaptation of French locutions and idioms to English usage, in the carrying over of French pronunciation to English words and even in such mechanical matters as spelling and handwriting. This use of French spelling and writing was in a way forced upon English. Since instruction in English was no longer given in the schools, but only in French, when one wished to write English the rules of French spelling and the style of French writing were simply transferred to English. The extent to which this Gallicizing of the English language was carried may be seen from the usage of the writer of the collection of saints' lives known as the Early South English Legendary, written about 1280. The author, or compiler, of this legendary, judging from the sentiments he expresses, was undoubtedly a patriotic Englishman, but his patriotism did not prevent him from following French fashions. Thus he seems to have pronounced his final *th's* in English words like *breath*, *death*, etc., with a very faint and almost disappearing sound, as a Frenchman, to whom the *th* sound was strange and difficult, would have done. He even rimes words which have final *th* with words which do not, as for example, *standeth* and *lande*.[1] In imitation of French spellings like *langue*, *morgue*, etc., in which *u* is written after the *g* to indicate the hard quality of the sound, we have spellings such as *finguer* for *finger*, *kingue* for *king*, and *doggue* for *dog*. Such spellings have not indeed entirely disappeared from English to this day. We still spell *tongue*, which is Old English *tunge*, and which accord-

[1] The final *e* of *lande* is of course pronounced.

ingly should give Modern English *tung*, like *lung;* but both the *o* instead of *u*, and the *u* after the *g*, are survivals of these French spellings. Other instances of French *gu* in English words are *guilt*, *guild*, *guess*.

Toward the middle of the fourteenth century, however, this mad admiration for everything French began to suffer a decline and English began to rise again to the ascendency. Thus in 1362 it was decreed that all pleadings in the law courts in England should be made in English and not in French, and in the same year the English Parliament for the first time was opened with an English speech. French still continued to be cultivated as a polite accomplishment, as indeed it is to this day, but from this time on English came to be more and more the language of literature and scholarship, as well as of the higher official and court life in England, and by 1500 (the end of the Middle English period) French had long ceased to be a serious rival of English. It should be remembered, however, that the English which thus came to the front again was very different from the literary English of the period before the French invasion. English had been so long neglected in favor of French that the feeling for it as a standard literary language had largely died out. It became for a time almost altogether a popular dialect. Consequently when English began again to rise into supremacy, it was this popular transformation of the older English that gradually assumed the rank of the new standard speech. The new English of the Middle English period is therefore the Old English of the Anglo-Saxon period as this latter was modified, first by the influence of French, and

second by its passage through the transforming bath of the popular speech.

8. **Summary of the Influence of the Norman Conquest.** The influence of the Norman Conquest and its consequences upon the English language and the English people was profound. The racial distinction between Norman and Englishman was soon lost; for the Norman when he had accepted England as his home, and even more when he had accepted English speech, became to all intents and purposes English. So completely were English and Norman assimilated that the third or fourth generation after the Conquest must often have been unable to distinguish between the two elements of the population: all were alike English. It was, however, a new English and a different England that gradually emerged after the Conquest. The speech and the whole body of thought of the nation, as a result of the direct and indirect influence of the Conquest, had undergone a remarkable change. In the first place, from a comparatively highly inflected language, English became a language of few inflections (see pp. 77 ff.). The vocabulary of the language changed from a "pure" vocabulary, that is, one made up of words of the same linguistic stock, to a bilingual vocabulary, a vocabulary made up of Teutonic and Romance elements. The influence of French extended also to the phrasing of English, the grouping of words in the sentence, and in many ways, direct and indirect, which are difficult to follow, the new tendencies affected the whole tone of English thought and expression. The language after it has been subjected to the French influence is more supple; it is the vehicle for more varied forms of expression than it had been before. In

this it was merely following the change in the intellectual life of the English people, which after the Conquest was richer and touched many more sides of life than it ever had in the Old English period. This new spirit in English thought and letters received its fullest expression in the writings of Geoffrey Chaucer (1340 (?)–1400). In Chaucer we have one who was not only a consummate artist in the use of language, but one also who, instead of the simple Old English themes of warfare and religion, could sound the whole gamut of human emotion, love, pathos, humor, chivalry, the dramatic instinct, the feeling for nature, in short all those shades of thought and feeling which the English heart is capable of experiencing or the English tongue of expressing.

9. **Modern England.** The England of the close of the Middle English period was never again subjected to foreign invasion or to any great external racial influences. The thought and language of the people followed in general a peaceful line of development, accompanying the intellectual, industrial, and political growth of the country and of the world as a whole. The periods in modern times that have been most important for the history of the language are the Renascence period, from about 1500 to the death of Shakspere in 1616, in which the main purpose was that of "enriching" the language (see pp. 234 ff.); the period of Dryden (1631–1700) and Pope (1688–1744), the so-called Augustan period of English literature, in which much thought and attention was given to "polishing" and "purifying" the language; and the most recent period of scientific, industrial, commercial, and political expan-

sion, with its marvelous extension of the bounds of human thought and activity. Of these later influences perhaps the most significant are those which arise from the commercial and colonial expansion of the English people, and concerning these a word in especial may be said.

10. **World English.** History makes few appeals to the imagination stronger than that presented by the picture of the little kingdom of England reaching out step by step until now its speech and its civilization circle the globe. Beginning with the union of Scotland and England under one king in 1603, and the conquest of Ireland under Elizabeth, the three countries, which by later acts of union formed the kingdom of Great Brtiain and Ireland, entered on a period of territorial and racial expansion that almost passes belief. By the settlement at Jamestown in 1607, and the later settlements in other parts of this country, the national speech of the Continent of North America was determined as English, a fact assured by the victory of Wolfe over Montcalm in 1759. The separation of the colonies from the mother country in 1776, and the later opening of their gates to almost countless hosts of foreign immigrants have not availed to change the destiny of the English language in the United States. It is to-day as much the national speech of the country as it is of Canada or of England herself.[1] By the English settlement of Australia in the

[1] Perhaps the opinion of an Englishman on this point may be worth quoting. It is that of E. A. Freeman, the historian of the Norman Conquest, who, in his *Impressions of the United States*, London, 1883, speaks as follows: "To me the English-speaking Commonwealth on the American mainland is simply one part of the great English folk, as the English-speaking kingdom in the European island is another part. My whole line of thought

early nineteenth century, the speech of that country also became English. In India, which was first conquered by the English in the middle of the eighteenth century, the native speech of the country, already a highly developed language in which a great literature was preserved, has maintained its existence as the popular and native language. English is, however, the official language of the country, and is becoming more and more the language of business, commerce, and education. Other colonies, or offshoots of colonies, in which English is spoken, are South Africa, New Zealand, and Jamaica.

The English language is coming to be used also more and more in countries which are not under English domination. It is to a large extent now the language of cosmopolitan intercourse in Europe, and there are few cities in which English is not sufficient on the main roads of travel to meet all a traveler's needs. English is thus slowly taking the place formerly filled by French. English is also, to a considerable extent, the language of international commerce. Nautical and manufacturing terms, words derived from English social customs, from English sports and games, in Germany, France, and in other nations, are evidence of the growing prestige of English.[1] In the Far East, in China, Japan, and the

and study leads me to think, more perhaps than most men, of the everlasting ties of blood and speech, and less of the accidental separation wrought by political and geographical causes. To me the English folk, wherever they may dwell, whatever may be their form of government, are still one people. . . . And so, to my mind at least, the thought of the true unity of the scattered English folk is a thought higher and dearer than any thought of a British Empire, to the vast majority of whose subjects the common speech of Chatham and Washington, of Gladstone and Garfield, is an unknown tongue."

[1] For lists of English words in German and French, see below, pp 255-257.

neighboring islands. English occupies a unique position as an almost pan-Asiatic language. It is spoken in a corrupt and simplified form, known as Pidgin English, by merchants and sailors all along the coasts. It is also, however, the language of oriental diplomacy to a considerable extent, and it is significant that the modern educational movement both in China and Japan lays great stress on the cultivation of the English language. American possessions in the Philippines will serve to strengthen the position which English takes in the Far East.[1]

It has been estimated that the number of people speaking English as their native tongue is at present between one hundred and twenty and one hundred and thirty millions. The number who speak German is estimated at about eighty millions, and the number of Russians at about the same. The numbers speaking French, Spanish, and Italian are estimated to be about fifty millions each. The rate of increase of English in the last century has been much greater than that of any other language. Since English is spread over such a wide extent of territory and is the language of rapidly growing and developing countries, it is altogether likely that this proportionate rate of increase will continue to be as great in the future as it has been in the past. Added to this the fact that English is the speech of an

[1] President (then Secretary) Taft, in a report submitted to Congress in January, 1908, calls attention to the fact that in the decade of the American occupation of the Philippine Islands, English had come to be spoken by a greater number of natives than had been the case with Spanish in the several centuries of Spanish occupation, — a striking illustration of the difference between English and Spanish methods of colonisation.

aggressive and venturesome people, that because of the simplicity of its structure and of its bilingual character as a Romance and a Teutonic tongue combined, it is the most easily acquired of all the languages of the western world, obviously English has a better chance than any other living language of becoming a world-language. Even the traditional national vices of insularity and conceit make for this result. The Engish and Americans are, undoubtedly, the greatest travelers of modern times, and the tenacity with which they hold to their native speech and native customs in foreign lands, while it often justly exposes them to the charge of complacency and provinciality, at the same time makes them effective distributors of English ideas and traditions. If Mohammed will not go to the mountain, then the mountain must come to Mohammed. That English will ever become the language of familiar daily intercourse in non-English countries is, of course, beyond the range of possibility. There is no indication that any country will ever altogether give up its native idiom for another, except through the gradual method of complete national and racial assimilation. But that English may become the language of international science, of international diplomacy, of international travel and commerce, is quite within the limits of the possible. In the medieval period the various nations each learned one other language besides their native idiom for the purpose of international communication, and this second language was always Latin. Later the place of Latin tended to be taken by French. Within the last two or three generations, however, French has begun to yield to English, and the universal language of the future is more likely

to be English than any other of the tongues of modern or ancient Europe.

11. **Artificial Language.** Of recent years a great deal has been said about a universal language. In all projects of this nature the attempt is to manufacture an artificial language which shall be free of the defects of existing languages, and which, because of its reasonableness and economy, will induce the nations of the world to accept it in the place of their native speech. Artificial languages are not of recent origin. Such linguistic experiments have been made from the earliest times, some of them extremely ingenious, but none that ever realized in the slightest degree the hopes which their creators had for them.[1] In England the later seventeenth and early eighteenth centuries were productive of a number of artificial languages. One, as set forth by Sir Thomas Urquhart in a volume published in London in 1653, bore the alluring title *Logopandecteision, or an Introduction to the Universal Language digested into six books, published both for his own utilitie and that of all pregnant and ingenious spirits.* In our own day various "ingenious spirits" have promulgated schemes of universal language, Volapuk, Esperanto, Glanik, and others, literally to be numbered by the dozen, and all different. Why have none of these experiments succeeded? In the first place, because the attempt to foist an artificial language upon a people runs counter to all the principles of development that have governed the growth of a people. A native speech arises in a community as the intimate accompaniment

[1] For a full description of all these endeavors, see Couturat et Leau, *Histoire de la langue universelle*, Paris, 1903.

of all its social customs. It is a gradual and largely unconscious growth, arising out of the immediate experiences of life. No speech, as we shall have continual occasion to point out, has ever submitted to the systematizings of the theorist, no matter how reasonable and consistent these seemed to be. The attempt, therefore, to bring about the acceptance of an artificial language on reasonable grounds is not likely to succeed, because of the simple fact that a language is not under the control of the direct reason. It is a common social possession, and a people fortunately does not, and cannot, change its social customs and habits by a sudden act of will. Moreover, one may doubt whether an artificial language, the best that can be devised by an individual or a group of individuals, ever can be as good as a natural language. A natural language which has developed through thousands of years has acquired possibilities of expression, in thought and especially in feeling, which no language manufactured in cold blood can hope to equal. The wisdom of the nation is greater than the wisdom of an individual, and a national language sums up all the past wisdom of the people. Yet again, a universal language, to remain universal after it had once been accepted by all peoples, must not be allowed to change. But if anything can be learned from the history of language, it is just this, that all languages are continually subject to change, and that nothing can prevent them from changing. The advocates of a universal language must accordingly not only perform the initial miracle of getting their language accepted, but they must then perform the second miracle, a continuous one, of keeping that language per-

manent and fixed. In short, no artificial language, no matter how skilfully it is constructed, is likely ever to extend beyond the small group of theorists with whom it originates, and these will continue to pursue it only until their attention is attracted to some more diverting theory. The way languages spread is not through theory, but through their use. And the reason why the English language is one of the most widely distributed of the modern world, is that men who have spoken English have made their way to all corners of the earth, have carried with them their ideals of life and conduct, and, with these ideals, the speech in which they find expression. Artificial languages are well enough as playthings for "ingenious spirits," but a real language is formed in the market places and by the firesides of a living world.

If, on the other hand, an artificial language is devised only for the expression of simple and impersonal ideas, such as might arise in international, commercial, or even scientific communication, then the matter becomes important only to a relatively small number of people. An artificial language of such kind is of not much more significance than a cable code or a system of signals. Most of the languages which have been fashioned for such purposes have been constructed on the basis of Latin, as, for example, the at present much exploited Esperanto. Latin is chosen as the basis because it is, in one form or another, a natural inheritance of all southern Europeans, it forms a large part of the English vocabulary, and third, it is the language which most educated persons are likely to know — or to have known — besides their native speech, if they know any. But

obviously, if you do not know Latin, and it is hardly a warrantable assumption that everybody knows Latin, you must first learn it, if you want to apply it to the understanding of an artificial language based on Latin. One might thus have to learn Latin, supposedly a more difficult language, in order to prepare the way for learning an easy, artificial language. But no artificial language has yet been made effective for international, scientific, or business communication, and it is not only doubtful if it can be, but also if it were made generally effective, whether more would not be lost than would be gained. Certainly an artificial language would be harmful if it should in any way prevent or limit the study of the natural languages. There is an old saying that a man is as many times a man as he has languages. No artificial language will ever take the place of a knowledge of the natural languages; at most it can only make the undiscriminating satisfied with an inadequate substitute.

III

THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE

1. The Classification of Languages. One of the important results of the modern study of language has been the classification of the various languages of the world into groups according to their relationships. Altho the science of language has not been able to confirm the Scriptural story of the original creation of language, nor, as yet, even to arrive at any altogether satisfactory theory of the beginnings of speech, it nevertheless has done a great deal in discovering lines of evolution and development in those languages of which we have record. It has discovered that there has been a continual change and growth in language, that the languages of modern times are each of them a historic product which developed slowly and regularly out of preceding stages. Moreover, it has shown that many apparently dissimilar languages are really closely related and are the descendants of some single original stock. It has thus divided languages into families.

2. **The Indo European Family of Languages.** One of the largest and most carefully studied groups or families of languages is that known as the Indo-European or Indo-Germanic family. This group comprises certain of the languages of Asia and practically all the languages of Europe. The original unified Indo-European language from which they are all theoretically derived is no

longer in existence. Its former existence is inferred, however, from the comparative study of the various Indo-European languages, since no theory serves so well to explain the many similarities which exist among them as the theory of a common origin. It should not be forgotten, however, that the theory of a common original language from which the various Indo-European languages were derived does not carry with it the theory of a common and single racial ancestry of all the Indo-European peoples. In the course of its development the primitive Indo-European speech undoubtedly imposed itself upon peoples of widely different race, very much as the branch languages, French or English, have done in later periods. We accept, therefore, a common speech ancestry for the Indo-European peoples, but not necessarily a common race ancestry. The period and the place in which this common original language was spoken are matters of very uncertain inference, and, indeed, are matters of comparatively slight importance. It concerns us much more to know the history, the changes and developments which have brought about the differentiation of the various languages of which we have specific knowledge. These languages have been carefully studied, so that now we are enabled to classify them according to their branches and subdivisions in an orderly fashion. The following is a list of the main members of the family, beginning with the languages farthest east in Asia and proceeding thence in order to the languages of western Europe:

1. Indo-Iranian. This branch is subdivided into (*a*) the Indian languages, including Sanskrit, the ancient literary language of India, and Prakrit and Pali, the modern native

dialects of India; and (*b*) the Iranian languages, including Persian and Avestan in their various periods, besides several other languages of the tablelands of Central Asia.

2. Armenian, spoken in parts of Asia Minor.

3. Greek, which may be subdivided into the various Greek dialects, Ionic, Attic, Doric, etc.

4. Albanian, spoken in the limited region of Albania, north of Greece.

5. Italic. The main language of this branch is Latin, from which are derived the modern Romance languages, French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Provençal, and several other less known languages besides.

6. Celtic. This branch may be subdivided into Gallic, the language of the people of ancient Gaul, of which little is known; British, the language of the original inhabitants of Britain; Welsh, the language of Wales; and Gaelic, including the language of the Scotch Highlands, Irish, and Manx.

7. Teutonic or Germanic. This branch, the one we are particularly interested in, falls into three main subdivisions, as follows:

(*a*) East Germanic, the main dialect of which is Gothic, known chiefly from fragments of a translation of the Bible, made in the fourth century by Ulfilas, the bishop of the West Goths.

(*b*) North Germanic, including Icelandic, Norse, Swedish, and Danish.

(*c*) West Germanic, including the following languages:

I. English, in its various periods of Anglo-Saxon, or Old English, Middle English, and Modern English.

II. Frisian, in the two periods of Old and Modern Frisian.

III. Franconian, the chief modern representatives of which are the languages of Holland and Flanders.

IV. Low German, the modern representative of which is Plattdeutsch.

V. High German, in its three periods of Old High German, Middle High German, and New High German, the language of modern Germany.

8. Balto-Slavonic. This branch falls into two main divisions (*a*) the Baltic languages, including Old Prussian, Lithuanian, and Lettic; and (*b*) the Slavonic languages, including Russian, Bulgarian, Illyrian, Bohemian, and Polish.

3. **The Principles of Classification of Languages.** The question arises, How do we know that these languages are related? What are the points of difference and resemblance which justify us in holding together the languages of the Indo-European family in a single group, and at the same time in dividing this group into the eight branches indicated above, with their further subdivisions? In answering the question, it should be noted, first, that the Indo-European family is constituted a group apart from the other languages of the world by certain features which all the languages of the family have in common, but which are unknown to languages outside the group. Thus, first of all, the languages of the Indo-European family are all inflectional in structure, that is, they indicate the relations which words bear to each other in the sentence by the use of case, gender, number, tense, voice, and other endings. This seems to those whose native speech is inflectional such a natural characteristic of language that it is often supposed that all languages make use of this device. Such is not the case, however, and there are certain languages, like the Chinese, which have no inflection at all, and others, like the Turkish, which have a kind of inflection that is so different from our kind of inflection that it has to be put into an entirely separate class from it.

In the second place, it has been found that the languages of the Indo-European family have a considerable number of words in common that are not found in other languages, and the number and the character of these words are so significant as to lead one almost necessarily to the inference that they are a common inheritance from a common original stock. The study of the languages of the Indo-European family from the point of view of their sounds and of their syntax confirms the results of the study of vocabulary and inflection, and makes unavoidable the conclusion that we have in them a group of closely and mutually related languages.

The method by which the division of the family into its branches has been obtained is similar to that which determined the classification of the family as a whole. It has been found that, altho all the branches of the family have certain characteristics in common, which hold them together as a family, at the same time each branch has its own individual characteristics, due to the special development it has followed and the special influences to which it has been subjected. It would carry us too far at present to attempt to show all the special characteristics of each branch, for example, how Greek differs from Latin and how Celtic differs from both ; all we can do is to point out the main characteristics which distinguish the Teutonic or Germanic branch, the one in which our special interest lies.

4. **The Teutonic Languages.** The main characteristics which the Teutonic languages have in common as features distinguishing them from the other Indo-European languages are four : (a) a regular shifting or change of consonants, known as Grimm's Law ; (b) the Teu-

tonic classification of the verb as strong and weak (or irregular and regular); (c) the twofold declension of the adjective as strong and weak; (d) the Teutonic system of word-accent. The last three of these characteristics need only a word of explanation, but the importance of Grimm's Law makes it deserving of a more extended discussion, and we shall therefore leave it to the last.

A comparison of the Modern English verb, which is representative of the Teutonic verb in general, with the Latin as representative of the original Indo-European verb, will show the distinguishing features of the Teutonic verbal system. The English verb consists of two classes, the weak, or regular verb, which forms its past tense by adding *d*, or *ed* (sometimes assimilated to *t*) to the present or infinitive stem, as for example, *walk*, *walked*, *walked;* and second, the strong, or irregular verb, which forms its tenses by an internal change of the radical vowel of the word, as in the verb *sing*, *sang*, *sung*. The Latin verb, on the other hand, falls into a number of different classes, dependent to be sure on the formation of the principal parts, but in which can be found no such simple principle of tense formation as that which distinguishes the English verb.

The twofold declension of the adjective has been lost in Modern English, inasmuch as the declension of the adjective (except for comparison) has been lost altogether. In the Old English period of the language, however, the full declension of the adjective was still maintained, as it is in New High German to this day. The simple principle of it is this — that when the adjective is preceded by a demonstrative pronoun or a definite article, it is declined in one way, called weak, and when

not preceded by a demonstrative pronoun or a definite article, it is declined in another way, called strong. Thus the phrase *These young boys* would take the weak form of the adjective in Old English, *þas geongan cnapan;* but the phrase *Young boys* would take the strong form, *Geonge cnapan.* Latin, like Modern English, would take the same form of the adjective in both phrases.

The Teutonic system of word-accent is sufficiently illustrated by Modern English usage. The rule there is that words of native origin usually take the stress on the root syllable, and this root syllable, except in the case of prepositional compounds, is almost always the first syllable of a word. Moreover, the accent of English words is *fixed*, that is, a noun has the same accent, no matter what its case may be, and a verb keeps the same accent through all its various inflections. Latin, on the contrary, which is again representative of the Indo-European accent, has what is called a *free* or *variable* accent, changing with the various forms of a word. Thus the nominative is stressed *imperátor*, but the accusative is *imperatórem.* The English derivative word, "emperor," has a fixed accent on the first syllable.

5. **Grimm's Law.** This law is named Grimm's Law because it has become generally known through its formulation in the year 1822, by the German scholar, Jacob Grimm, who was not only the writer of the famous fairy tales, but was also a philologist of great industry and learning. It is called a law, but it is purely an empirical law. That is to say, by observation the discovery was made that a definite set of linguistic phenomena operated in a certain regular way, and the generalization drawn from this observation was formulated as the law,

or rule, of the phenomena. This kind of law does not imply that the phenomena *must* act in a certain way, that there is a compelling law-giver or power back of the law which controls its action. It simply states what does happen, or what appears to our observation to happen. The ultimate explanation of the cause of the series of phenomena known as Grimm's Law is one that, so far, has escaped the scientific students of language. The facts as they are we accept because we observe them, but no satisfactory theory in explanation of these facts has yet been brought forward.

The phenomena which are the facts upon which Grimm's Law is based are certain regular changes in sounds. It was observed that where Indo-European words (as represented say by Greek or Latin) appeared with certain consonants, the same word in the Teutonic languages appeared with different consonants, always, however, according to a regular scheme of equivalents. Thus Indo-European *p* became regularly Germanic *f*, and *d* became regularly *t*; the relation of English *foot* to Greek ποδ-ος (pod-os) is therefore obvious. Other illustrations of the change of *p* to *f* are Latin *pater*, English *father*; Latin *pellis*, English *fell*. The change of Indo-European *d* to *t* is further illustrated by English *tooth*, Latin *dent-is*; English *ten* (Old English *tigon*), Latin *decem*. Another regular change, which has been illustrated by the word-pairs English *father*, Latin *pater*, and English *tooth*, Latin *dent-is*, is that of Indo-European *t* to Teutonic *th*. Further illustrations are Latin *tres*, English *three*; Latin *tenuis*, English *thin*; Latin *tu*, English *thou*. Another regular change is that from Indo-European *c* to Teutonic *h*, as in Latin *corn-us*, Eng-

lish *horn;* Latin *coll-is*, English *hill.* Illustrations of these changes might be increased indefinitely. Instead of adding others, however, it will suffice to make a general statement of all the consonants affected by the law and their correspondences. They may be grouped as follows:

The Indo-European labial consonants *bh*, *b*, *p* became respectively the Teutonic consonants *b*, *p*, *f*.

The Indo-European dental consonants *dh*, *d*, *t* became respectively the Teutonic consonants *d*, *t*, *th*.

The Indo-European palatal and guttural consonants *gh*, *g*, *k (c)*, became respectively the Teutonic consonants *g*, *k*, *h*.

It should be understood, of course, that this is a very general statement of Grimm's Law, and that, as thus expressed, it is open to numerous exceptions and to the qualifications of some important sub-laws. Moreover, it should be remembered in tracing back English words to their cognates in the other Indo-European languages which are not subject to this shifting of consonants, as for example, Latin, that these other languages may also have had each its own peculiar development in its consonant system which may serve to obscure the simple operation of the law. It is also apparent that only those English words which are of native origin, that is, only that half of our bilingual language which is Teutonic and not late borrowed Romance, can be subject to Grimm's Law. Despite its various restrictions and qualifications, however, Grimm's Law is one of the most valuable linguistic principles which we possess. It enables us not only to group the Teutonic languages together, but also often to determine the history and etymology of the vocabularies of the various Teutonic languages, to tell

what words are native and what are foreign. Moreover, the study of Grimm's Law has carried in its wake the discovery of many other linguistic laws and principles which are of the greatest interest and importance, but which cannot be entered into at present.

6. English and German. The exact relation between Modern English and Modern German should be clearly understood. Of course one is not derived from the other, as is so frequently the popular belief. The number of words in the German language which were directly borrowed from English is comparatively small, most of them having been taken over of recent years, and the same is true of the German words in the English language.[1] The two languages are, however, of the same stock, and they resemble each other because they, like the other Teutonic languages, are derived from some common original Teutonic mother speech, which is no longer in existence and which has left no written records, but the existence of which we infer from the comparative study of the various Teutonic languages, just as we infer the former existence of a parent Indo-European speech for all the different Indo-European languages. German and English, therefore, have much in common because they inherit their language from a common ancestral speech. They differ, on the other hand, from each other, because throughout centuries of development each has followed its own course and has been subject to its own special influences. The most important special development of German, which differentiates it from English, is what is known as the second shifting of consonants. English and German alike are

[1] For a list of these words, see below, pp. 255-256.

subject to Grimm's Law, or the first shifting of consonants, but the German consonants which resulted from the operation of Grimm's Law have undergone a further change, a shifting which is peculiar to that language, and which is one of the things which justify the linguist in setting off that language as a special subdivision of the Teutonic language. Thus where English has *p*, German usually has *f* or *pf* in cognate words, as in English *help*, German *helfen;* English *ship*, German *schiff;* English *sleep*, German *schlafen;* English *sheep*, German *schaf;* English *sap*, German *sapf*. Likewise where English has *d* German usually has *t*, as in the following pairs of words: *dead*, *tot* (formerly spelled *todt*); *deaf*, *taub;* *deal*, *theil* (the *h* being silent in pronunciation); *do*, *thun;* *cold*, *kalt;* *hold*, *halten;* and so with many others. English *t* frequently appears as German *z* or *tz*, as in *to*, *zu;* *tin*, *zinn;* *tooth*, *zahn;* *tongue*, *zunge;* *write*, *ritzen;* *cat*, *katz;* *sit*, *sitzen*. English *v* appears in cognate German words as *b*, as in *over*, *ober;* *leave*, (*er-*) *lauben;* *grave*, *grab;* *shove*, *schieben*; *love*, *liebe;* *knave*, *knabe*.

7. **Periods of English.** From the seventh century, the earliest period of which we have any knowledge of recorded forms of English, the language has been subject to constant change. In this it merely partakes of the nature of language in general, for speech, so long as it is living in actual unconstrained use, is continually growing and developing. It is only in the so-called "dead" languages that language can be drawn up into a system once and for all. From the earliest Indo-European times, therefore, down to the present day, it is safe to say that the language which we now know

as English has been ceaselessly, tho often imperceptibly, dropping old and assuming new forms. Since this process has been unbroken from the beginning, it is in a way illogical to divide the history of the language into periods. There have been, however, certain times at which changes took place more rapidly than at others, owing to special attendant circumstances, and provided we keep always in mind that the dates by which we divide a language into periods are more or less arbitrarily chosen, they will serve the convenient purpose of indicating roughly the large general divisions in the development of the language. In this way we may indicate three great divisions in the history of English:

I. The Old English, or Anglo-Saxon period, beginning with the coming of the Angles, Jutes, and Saxons to England and ending with the Norman Conquest in 1066, or better, about 1100.

II. The Middle English period, extending from 1100 to about 1500.

III. The Modern English period, extending from 1500 to the present time.

The language in each of these periods is distinguished by developments which are to a large extent characteristic of the respective periods. These developments affect all the various sides of the language, — sounds, inflections, words, and syntax, and it will be the purpose of the following chapters to give an account of the changes in the language from these several points of view.

IV

ENGLISH INFLECTIONS

1. The Nature of Inflection. It has already been pointed out (pp. 47 ff.) that inflection is one of the distinguishing characteristics of the family of Indo-European languages. The extent to which these various languages make use of inflection differs greatly, and there is often considerable variation, as in English, even in the periods of one and the same language. Broadly defined, inflection is the change or variation in the forms of a word for the purpose of indicating corresponding variations in its meaning and use. This definition implies that there is a certain root element which remains constant, but which is given specific application and meaning by additions to this element. This definition, however, is too broad for the traditional use of the term inflection, since it includes not only inflection for person, number, case, gender, tense, and so forth, but also such word-changes as *swift*, adjective, to *swift-ly*, adverb. The term usually employed, however, to designate such a change as that of *swift* to *swiftly* is derivation or composition. By composition one means the placing together of two word elements each of which has a more or less separate and independent existence. The degrees of this independence may vary greatly. A compound like *house-boat* is made up of two words, each of which may be completely

independent. On the other hand the *-ly* of the compound *swiftly*, the *-dom* of *kingdom*, the *-ness* of *kindness*, are not really complete separate words. They have, however, more meaning as independent elements in the word than true inflections, as for example the plural *-s* of *books*, the preterite ending *-ed* in *differed*, and the participial ending *-en* in *spoken*. It is not always easy, in fact it is not always possible, to draw the line between composition and inflection, and it is altogether probable that a good many inflectional elements are merely weakened forms of earlier compositional elements of words. The two things run into each other imperceptibly, and a hard and fast division between them cannot be made. It is best to regard inflection as the general term, including inflection proper and derivation, and to use the specific term derivation, or composition, for those instances in which the elements of a word are plainly felt to have separate existence.[1]

Inflection may be of three kinds, initial, internal, or end inflection. In former stages of the language initial inflection was used to form the past tenses of certain verbs, known as reduplicating verbs; this was a method of tense formation similar to the use of augments in Greek. It has been completely lost in later English and is only very sparingly represented in Old English. A

[1] A definition of inflection is often made to the effect that inflection includes only those variations or changes in the form of a word for the expression of different uses within its own part of speech; when the part of speech is changed, then we have composition But the noun *king* + *dom* gives *kingdom*, which is still a noun; *man* + *hood*, gives *manhood*, also a noun. Again the numeral adjective *one* by the addition of *-ly* becomes *only*; the word *only* may be an adjective, as in *the only man*, or an adverb, as in *If I only knew*. Shall we call the change of *one* to *only* inflection when *only* is used as an adjective, and composition when it is used as an adverb?

kind of initial inflection is used in Modern English to indicate gender, as in *man-servant* and *maid-servant*, *cock-sparrow*, *hensparrow*. It is better, however, to regard such words as compounds, or derivatives, since the two elements of which each is composed have separate existence. The word *woman*, which looks as tho it were the feminine of *man* with the feminine inflectional syllable *wo*-prefixed, is originally a compound word which has become obscured. It is Old English *wif-*, the Modern English "wife," + *man* = *wifeman*. The words *male* and *female* also look like inflectional forms of the same word, but historically they are not. The word *male* comes through the French from the Latin *masculus*, a word of the same meaning. The word *female* comes from Latin *femella*, a diminutive of *femina*, "woman." This word should give in English the form *femell*, which indeed is the form that Chaucer and his contemporaries used. The word *femell*, however, became confused with *male* and the second syllable of it was supposed to be the same as *male*, hence the form *female*. The syllable *fe-*, consequently, altho it originally had no such value, is now practically felt to be a feminine forming inflectional prefix to *male*.

Inflection in English is commonly, however, either internal or end inflection. Examples of internal inflection are *sing, sang, sung; man, men; tooth, teeth*. The most general method of inflection in English consists in the addition of inflectional elements at the end of a word, as in (*I*) *sing*, (*he*) *sings; cat, cats; walk, walked*.

There are three other ways of showing the different uses of a word which are not true inflections, but makeshifts to take the place of inflections. The first of these

is the use of the mechanical device of the apostrophe in the possessive case, as in *boy's*, *boys'*; so far as the sound of these words is concerned they cannot be distinguished from the nominative and objective plural, *boys*, and the value of the apostrophe is purely visual. The second device is that of using altogether different words for the various values of a part of speech, as for example *go*, *went*, *gone; am* or *is*, *was*, *been*, for the tenses of the verb; *bad*, *worse*, *worst; good*, *better*, *best*, for the degrees of the adverb or adjective; *I*, *you*, *he* for the persons of the personal pronoun. The third equivalent for true inflection is the device of using a phrase as, for example, *more swift*, *most swift* in the comparison of the adjective and adverb; (*he*) *has gone*, (*he*) *had gone*, etc., in the conjugation of the verb. English has been driven to use these devices very extensively to make up for inflections which it has lost.

2. **English as a "Grammarless Tongue."** The history of English inflections has been one of continuous loss. As far back as we can go in the history of the English language we can trace a gradual breaking down of the inflectional system. And even when we arrive at the earliest periods of Old English, there are sure indications that the language is already in a transitional stage, and that the tendency towards inflectional loss in English is one that goes far back into the prehistoric periods of the language. This tendency toward inflectional loss is not to be regarded as a degeneration of the language. The language of less highly civilized peoples and eras is often more elaborately inflected than the language of a more highly developed people and civilization. Thus to-day the language of certain tribes of African

savages is infinitely more complex in grammatical structure than that of any of the European nations. In his speech, the savage makes use of a great deal of unnecessary machinery, and, as is almost always true of the rude and uncultivated, he makes a tremendous physical effort in attempting to express the content of his mind.

The development in the English inflectional system has, of course, been altogether unconscious, so far as the users of the language are concerned. The language changed to meet the needs of those who spoke it, and no conscious theory of improving the language by getting rid of unnecessary inflections has ever been in operation. Inflections were lost because, in the practical use of the language, men tended to express themselves as briefly as possible. In English, furthermore, the language has developed freely and unrestrainedly from the earliest times down to the Modern English period. This would not have been the case, at least with literary English, if we had had a great classic literature in the Old English period, which was set up and retained as a model for all later periods, as classical Latin literature became the model for all later generations of Romans. If that had taken place our language would now probably have the comparatively elaborate Old English inflectional system, instead of the present Modern English one, which is almost completely devoid of inflection.

The number of Modern English inflections is so small that they may be very briefly summarised. The only parts of speech which are capable of inflection are the noun, the pronoun, the verb, and for the single characteristic of comparison, the adverb and the adjective, altho comparison might just as well be called composition

or derivation. Of these the noun inflects for number, singular and plural, and for one case, the possessive, singular and plural, the other cases being all alike. The personal pronoun inflects for three persons, for three genders, for two numbers, and in some forms for three cases, nominative, possessive, and objective. The other pronouns inflect only for number and case. The verb inflects more elaborately than the noun, but less elaborately than the personal pronoun. The present tense usually has two forms, one for the third person, singular number, and another for all other uses of the present. There is a distinctive form for the past tense, which is the same, however, for all persons and both numbers. The past participle sometimes has a distinctive form (*see*, *saw*, *seen*), but usually it is the same as the form of the past tense (*walk*, *walked*, *walked; bind*, *bound*, *bound*). In a few instances, that is, *be* and *were*, the present and past of the verb *to be*, and the third person singular of the present tense of other verbs, there are special forms for the subjunctive mood; but these are rarely used.

So few are the inflections of Modern English as compared with those, for example, of Latin or Greek, or even of Old English, the earlier stage of its own language, that it has been characterized as a "grammarless tongue." This characterization is approximately true of course only if we think of grammar as meaning the same thing as inflection. In Greek and Latin grammar, inflection, or accidence as it is sometimes called, does play a large part, inflection and the rules of concord being the two important divisions of classical grammar. Through its loss of inflections, however, English has

also simplified its rules of concord, and it consequently does not present the same kind of grammatical system as the classical languages. That it is a "grammarless tongue," however, in the true sense of the word grammar, is not at all true. The language has its structure and its rules of right and wrong, and it is as necessary to observe them as it was for Greek and Roman to observe their inflectional system and rules of concord.

3. **The Inflections of the Old English Period.** It is convenient to divide the history of English inflections into three chronological periods, corresponding to the three great stages in their development. The first is the Old English period, from the earliest records to about 1100; this is the period of *full inflections*. The second is the Middle English period, from 1100 to about 1500; this is the period of *leveled inflections*. The third is the Modern English period, from 1500 to the present time, and this is the period of *lost inflections*. The periods of course pass over into each other gradually, altho at the two main dividing lines, at 1100 and 1500, changes took place more rapidly than during the central portions of the periods. There is, therefore, both in the Old English and in the Middle English period, a fairly stable and fixed central or classical form of the language which we shall briefly describe.

The Old English is called the period of full inflections because the inflections of the language at that time were not only relatively more numerous than they were in later periods, but were also pronounced with a full and distinct sense of the values of the various vowels in the inflectional endings. Since the inflectional endings bore

no accent, it will be seen that this method of pronouncing the inflectional vowels is very different from the tendency of Modern English (or even of Middle English), where we regularly obscure final unaccented syllables in pronunciation. One or two illustrations will suffice to make this point clear. In Old English a noun in the nominative singular might end in *-a*, as *hunta*, "hunter"; or *-e*, as *tunge*, "tongue"; or *-u*, as *sunu*, "son"; or *-o*, as *wlenco*, "pride." Now these various endings were all given distinctly and clearly the values of the vowels *-a*, *-e*, *-u*, and *-o*, and were not obscured and slurred as they would be in our Modern English pronunciation. The same principle holds true when the inflectional syllable consists of a vowel followed by a consonant or consonants. The noun *stan*, "stone," has a genitive singular *stanes* and a nominative and accusative plural *stanas*, each of which is clearly distinguished by the value of its vowel. In short, we may say that the inflectional ending was treated with a great deal more respect and consideration in the Old English period than in later periods. There was more feeling for it and consequently a stronger tendency making for its preservation.

The tendency which kept the vowels of the inflectional syllables full and clear, served naturally to prevent the loss of inflectional endings. The extent of inflection in the Old English period may be briefly indicated, choosing for this purpose the West Saxon dialect in the early West Saxon period, that is, English between the years 800 and 900, in the central and southern parts of England. The noun inflected for three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter, and gender in Old

English, as in Modern German or Latin, was still grammatical, not natural or logical, as it has become in Modern English. That is, gender in Old English refers to the way in which a noun is inflected, not necessarily to the sex of the person or object designated by the noun. Thus Old English nouns ending in *-a* are masculines, and this includes such names of inanimate objects as *mona*, "moon"; *noma*, "name"; *steorra*, "star."[1] The noun inflected also for two numbers, singular and plural. It inflected for five cases, nominative, genitive (from which is derived the modern possessive), dative (lost in Modern English), accusative (the modern objective), and instrumental (also lost in Modern English). Furthermore it inflected for class or type of declension, there being two main types of noun declension, the strong and the weak, and each of these classes consisted of several sub-types or classes. The somewhat complicated state of affairs may be best represented by the following table of the different inflectional endings which the nouns of the various genders and types may take. Words which appeared in certain cases without any inflectional ending are indicated merely by the dash. Since the in-

[1] The distinction between the grammatical gender of Old English, based upon the forms of words, and the natural gender of Modern English, based upon the meanings of words, should be clearly apprehended. In Old English, adjectives have gender as well as nouns, since they are inflected in forms to agree with their nouns. With the loss of inflections, Modern English has given up the distinctions of grammatical gender, and uses the term now for the much simpler and more natural purpose of indicating sex. This explains why Englishmen often find it difficult to understand why the possessive pronoun must be feminine in a French sentence like *Il a perdu sa femme*, "He has lost his wife." But the possessive *sa* is an adjective, and as such it must take the feminine form when it modifies a feminine noun, no matter what its antecedent may be, or what its logical meaning may be.

strumental is always the same as the dative in the noun, it is not mentioned specifically in the table.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nominative	-, -u, -a, -e, -o.	*Nominative*	-, -as, -u, -a, -e, -an.
Genitive	-es, -e, -an.	*Genitive*	-a, -ena.
Dative	-, -e, -an, -o.	*Dative*	-um.
Accusative	-, -e, -an, -o.	*Accusative*	same as the nominative.

An examination of this table will show that the inflectional system of the Old English noun is not distinctive for all uses, that the same ending has sometimes to do duty for various values of the noun. Thus the ending *-e* may appear in any case of the singular, or in the nominative or accusative plural; and there are other endings also which have to be used several times, the ending *-an*, for example, being used five times. The most distinctive and characteristic endings are the *-es* of the genitive singular, which appears only in the genitive singular; *-as*, which appears only in the nominative and accusative plural; and *-um*, which is always the ending of all nouns in the dative plural. It will be seen later that these endings are just the ones that are important in the further development of the inflectional system. The declension of the strong masculine noun *stān*, "stone"; the strong feminine noun *lār*, "lore, learning"; the strong neuter noun *hof*, "court"; and the weak masculine noun *steorra*, "star"; and the weak feminine noun *tunge*, "tongue," may be cited in illustration of the declension of five large groups of Old English nouns, altho these five are not exhaustive of all the different Old English declensions. The declensions of *stān* and *steorra* are typical of by far the greatest number of nouns in Old English.

STRONG.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masculine.	*Fem.*	*Neu.*	*Masculine.*	*Fem.*	*Neu.*
Nominative	stān	lār	hof	stānas	lāre	hofu
Genitive	stānes	lāre	hofes	stāna	lāra *or* lārena	hofa
Dative	stāne	lāre	hofe	stānum	lārum	hofum
Accusative	stān	lāre	hof	stānas	lāre	hofu

WEAK.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*
Nominative	steorra	tunge	steorran	tungan
Genitive	steorran	tungan	steorrena	tungena
Dative	steorran	tungan	steorrum	tungum
Accusative	steorran	tungan	steorran	tungan

There are various minor declensions of the noun in Old English besides the above five types, but most of these have been more or less completely assimilated in later English to the type forms represented by *stān* and *steorra*. Only one has left considerable traces in Modern English, nouns in which the plural number was formed by mutation of the radical vowel. For example, Old English *fōt*, *gōs*, *mūs*, *brōc*, etc., formed their plurals *fēt*, *gēs*, *mȳs*, *brēk*, corresponding to Modern English *foot*, *feet; goose*, *geese; mouse*, *mice*. The word *brōc* has disappeared in the singular in Modern English, which should have *brook;* its plural is retained, however, in *breeches*, which has the old mutation of the vowel to indicate the plural, but which has also added the regular plural *-s* ending of nouns like *stān*. Some other words which in Old English belong to this class of mutation plurals have been attracted completely into the larger class of regular nouns. Thus Old English *bōc*, *bēc* should give regularly Modern English *book*, with the plural *beek*, like *goose*, *geese*. But by analogy to the

large class of plurals in *-s* without mutation of the vowel, *beek* was changed to *books*.

The Old English adjective differs from the Modern English adjective in that it inflects for all those forms for which the noun inflects, for gender, number, case, and type or class, as strong and weak. The rules of concord also demand that an adjective shall agree in its inflection with the gender, number, and case of the noun which it modifies. The main inflections of the adjective, for all genders and types, are as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.			
Nominative	-,	-a,	-e.	*Nominative*	-,	-e,	-a, -an.
Genitive	-es,	-re,	-an.	*Genitive*	-ra,	-ena.	
Dative	-um,	-re,	-an.	*Dative*	-um.		
Accusative	-,	-ne,	-e, -an.	*Accusative* same as the nominative.			

With the adjective should be grouped the definite article, for this part of speech in Old English is a real adjective, inflecting like the adjective and like the Modern German article, for gender, number, and case. The inflections of the article are as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter*	*Masculine.*	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nominative	sē, "the"	sēo	þæt[1]		þā	
Genitive	þǣs, "of the"	þǣre	þæs		þāra	
Dative	þǣm, "to the"	þǣre	þǣm		þām	
Accusative	þone, "the"	þā	þæt		þā	
Instrumental	þȳ, "by or with the"	...			...	

[1] The symbol þ, also written ð, (called "thorn") is equivalent to *th*; the symbol æ (called the digraph) has the sound of Modern English *a* in *hat*, the value of Old English *a*, as for example in *stān*, being the same as the *a* in Modern English *father*.

The Old English personal pronoun differs mainly from the Modern English in that it has preserved remnants of an old dual number, the only survival in any period of English of an inflection which probably, in prehistoric stages of the language, appeared also in the noun, the adjective, and the verb; and secondly, in that it has only one form for the second person, *ðū*, Modern English "thou," with its various case forms. The dual number survives only in the personal pronoun of the first and second persons. The inflections of the Old English personal pronoun, followed in each case by its Modern English derivative or equivalent when it has one, are as follows:

First Person Singular.		Second Person Singular.	
Nominative	ic, "I"	*Nominative*	ðū, "thou"
Genitive	mīn, "mine"	*Genitive*	ðīn, "thine"
Dative	mē, "me"	*Dative*	ðē, "thee"
Accusative	mē, "me"	*Accusative*	ðē, "thee"

Dual.		Dual.	
Nominative	wit	*Nominative*	git
Genitive	uncer	*Genitive*	incer
Dative	unc	*Dative*	inc
Accusative	unc	*Accusative*	inc

Plural.		Plural.	
Nominative	wē, "we"	*Nominative*	gē, "ye"
Genitive	ūre, *or* ūser, "our"	*Genitive*	ēower, "your"
Dative	ūs, "us"	*Dative*	ēow, "you"
Accusative	ūs, "us"	*Accusative*	ēow, "you"

Third Person Singular.

	Masculine.	*Feminine.*	*Neuter.*
Nominative	hē, "he"	hēo, "she"	hit, "it"
Genitive	his, "his"	hiere, "her"	his, "its"
Dative	him, "him"	hiere, "her"	him, "it"
Accusative	hine, "him"	hīe, "her"	hit, "it"

PLURAL.

	Mas. Fem. Neu.	
Nominative	hī, *or* hīe,	"they"
Genitive	hiera,	"their"
Dative	him,	"them"
Accusative	hī, or hīe,	"them"

These forms of the personal pronouns were simplified in several ways in the Middle English period. In the first place the dual forms disappeared, and with them the last traces of the dual number in English. The form *ic*, since it generally stood in unstressed position, tended to assume a weakened form, which later became conventionalized in spelling as capital *I*.[1] The genitives *mīn*, *ðīn*, persisted as *mine*, *thine*, but there also developed forms without final *-n*, that is, *my*, *thy*, which were used before words beginning with a consonant, the full forms being used before vowels and in the absolute position. The dative and accusative fell together under

[1] The use of the capital for the pronoun of the first person, nominative case, in English, a custom not shared by any other European language (*cf.* German *ich*, French *je*, Italian *io*, Spanish *yo*), is due to purely mechanical reasons, and not, as it is sometimes invidiously said, to the egotism of the English people. The custom arose in the late Middle English period, when in order to distinguish the letter *i* in cursive writing, which as a single stroke of the pen might easily be mistaken as part of another letter, it was commonly written as J or I. The origin of the period over *i* is the same; the period was used to indicate that this stroke of the pen over which it stood was the letter *i*, and not merely a preliminary stroke to some other letter. It was thus originally a mechanical device similar to that now in use in printing offices, where in manuscripts a stroke is placed over an *n*, i. e. n̄, and under a *u*, i. e. u̲, in order to prevent mistaking one for the other. With the invention of printing, the form I was carried over from writing as the symbol for the letter when standing alone, altho in the early days of printing both the capital and the small letter were thus used. Gradually, however, with the establishment of fixed conventions in printing and writing, the capital letter came to be the only recognized form for this purpose. For the importance of stress as affecting the development of a sound, see below, pp. 142–148.

the forms *me*, *thee*, *us*, and *you*. Like the first person singular, because it was in the unstressed position, Old English *ūs* developed a weak form with short vowel, Modern English *us*, although regularly *ū* should give *ou* (*cf.* Old English *hūs*, Mod. Eng. *house*, etc.). The forms of the third person were variously modified. The dative and accusative singular were simplified under one form, for the masculine *him*, the old dative, for the feminine *her*, likewise the old dative. The neuter dative-accusative form became *hit*, "it," the old accusative, the old dative, *him*, not being used here as the dative was in the masculine and feminine because of its identity with the masculine form. The genitive singular of the neuter, *his*, was also gradually discarded because of its identity with the genitive singular of the masculine, and in its place was developed a new genitive singular neuter formed by adding the regular *-s* ending of genitives to the uninflected form of the nominative. In all these developments it will be seen that the tendency was towards a limitation of the number, but also towards a stricter definition of the value of forms. Old English permitted identity of forms in different grammatical categories, *his*, for example, for both masculine and neuter genitive; but the tendency, at least, of later English development has been in the direction of a single form for each grammatical category. This tendency was helped in the present instance by the change from grammatical to logical gender. So long as gender was a purely grammatical distinction, as in Old English, one might use the same form for masculine and neuter; but when gender came to mean a real difference in the nature of the objects designated, as in Modern English, it was

obviously necessary to have distinctive forms for the different genders. The plural forms did not persist because of their similarity in form to singulars, *hī* of the plural not being readily distinguishable from *hē* of the singular, *hiera* from *hiere*, "her," and *him* being identical in singular and plural. For the Old English forms were consequently substituted the forms *they*, *their*, *them*, probably under the influence of the Scandinavian forms, which begin with *th*, and perhaps also partly out of recollection of the plural forms of the definite article, which also begin with *th*. The first person singular of the feminine became *she*, in which there is probably to be seen an amalgamation of the Old English feminine article *sēo* with the pronoun *hēo*, which might otherwise have been confused with the masculine *hē*.

The adverb in Old English does not differ greatly from its use in Middle and in Modern English, in all three stages of the language being susceptible of inflection only for the purpose of showing degrees of comparison. Various inflections, however, which were lost in later English, were used in Old English with the power of forming adverbs. Thus the dative singular ending *-e*, added to an adjective formed an adverb, e. g., *soft*, adjective, *softe*, adverb; the dative plural ending was similarly used, e. g., *hwil*, "time," Modern English "while," with the dative plural inflection, *hwilum*, was used with sense of Modern English "at times," "from time to time." The genitive singular ending *-es* also often had adverbial value, as in *dæg*, "day," *dæges*, "by day." With the gradual disappearance of inflections, these inflectional adverbs ceased to be used, their place being taken largely by the compositional adverb with *-ly*.

The adverb in *-um* persists, however, in the archaic form "whilom"; the *-es* adverb of genitive origin is not now distinguishable from the plural form. But in constructions like "Evenings is the best time to see him," the word "evenings" is a direct survival of the old genitive adverb construction. With the loss of final inflectional *-e*, adverbs like *softe* could no longer be distinguished from the adjective form *soft*. This type of adverb formation also persists in Modern English in adverbs without ending, as in constructions like "Go *slow*"; "He fought *hard*, but there was no hope for him"; and very commonly in Biblical and poetic English in phrases like "*exceeding* glad," "the sun shone *cold* upon the earth."

The inflection of the Old English verb differs from that of the Modern English verb only in having a larger number of specific forms for the various persons, tenses, etc. There was considerable variety among the dialects of Old English in their treatment of the inflections of the verb, the most conservative dialect being the West Saxon, which is made the basis of this description. In Old English, verbs are classified as weak, the Modern English regular verbs, and strong, the Modern English irregular verbs (see above Chapter III, § 4). Besides, they inflect for the three persons; for two numbers; for three moods, indicative, imperative, and optative or subjunctive, the last mood being used much more extensively in Old English than it is in Modern English; for the formation of the verbals, the participle and the infinitive; and for two tenses, the present and the past or preterite. The forms of the present tense are also used with the value of the future, and besides the

simple inflectional tenses, as in Modern English, there are a number of phrasal verbs, formed with the auxiliaries *habban*, "have," *sculan*, "shall," *willan*, "will," *beon*, "be," etc., joined to the infinitive of the main verb. Old English, like Modern English, has no real inflectional passive, but only a compound or phrasal passive, formed with the help of the verb *beon*, "be," "was," etc., joined to the past participle of the verb. The infinitive ends usually in *-an*, *singan*, "to sing," but occasionally also in *-ian*, *endian*, "to end." The preposition "to" is not used in Old English merely as the sign of the infinitive, as in Modern English, but when used it is followed by the inflected form of the infinitive, in the dative case, the whole being virtually a prepositional phrase indicating purpose, e. g., *to singanne*, "for the purpose of singing," *to endianne*, "in order to end." The present participle ends in *-ende*, *singende;* the past participle of the strong verb ends in *-en*, *sungen*, "sung," of the weak verb in *-ed*, *-od*, frequently carrying also the prefix *ge-*, e. g., *ge-fylled*, "filled," *ge-endod*, "ended." The personal endings are few in number. For the present tense indicative singular they are *-e*, *-est*, *-eð: ic singe*, *ðu singest*, *he singeð*. All persons of the plural end in *-að: we*, *ge*, *hie singað*. But most verbs, whose infinitives end in *-ian*, have *-að* in the third person singular, and *-iað* in all persons of the plural. In the optative or subjunctive all singulars end in *-e* and all plurals in *-en*. In the past tense the first and third persons of strong verbs have no endings: *ic sang*, *he sang;* but the second person has the ending *-e*, and likewise in the root of the word takes over the radical vowel of the plural, *ðu sunge*. The plural has the ending *-on* for all persons, *we*,

ge, hie sungon. In the weak verb the second person singular of the past tense has the *-est* ending of the present, *ðu fylledest:* the first and third are *ic fyllede, he fyllede*, and the plural *we, ge, hie fylledon.* The subjunctive forms are the same for the past as for the present, *-e* for the singular, and *-en* for the plural. The only other forms which need be noted are those of the imperative, which appear in the singular either without ending or with the endings *-e* or *-a*, and in the plural with the ending *-að*, or *-iað*.

4. **The Inflections of the Middle English Period.** The language of the Middle English period underwent a great number of changes, affecting not only inflections, but also vocabulary, sounds, and the whole structure of the language. The causes of this development, this thorogoing reconstruction of the language, are very complex. So far as inflections go, however, one of the main causes was pretty certainly a change in the way words were accented in the Middle English period. The only kind of word stress which could have preserved the full inflectional endings of the Old English period is a general or distributed stress, spread over the word as a whole. But in the Middle English period apparently the stress of words began to become more like that of Modern English, to be placed strongly and heavily on the first syllables of words, with a consequent obscuring and weakening of the later syllables of the words. A second main cause of inflectional change in the Middle English period was the condition of general social and political unrest which accompanied the period of the Danish Conquest, and, a little later, the Norman Conquest. The result of these two conquests was the

complete overthrow of the English social and political system. For a period of several generations there was a time of great confusion; the standards, the traditional rules and habits of the English people of Britain, in speech and in other matters, were forgotten and broken down. The result was that the constraints of a rigid social custom, of conventional education and good breeding, being to a considerable extent removed, the language was allowed to develop in an untrammeled and popular way. The usages of the radical, the ignorant, and uneducated part of the people were not held in check and the result was that when English began to reassert itself, it was no longer the English of the Old English period, but an English that had been modified by passing through a period of popular and natural development.

The situation was very much as tho what we now call "good English" should for some reason or other be given up, say as a result of a Japanese conquest of America. For a time Japanese would have the upper hand. Americans would all try to learn Japanese, to talk Japanese, to act like Japanese, because the Japanese would give tone to everything and would be the controlling power in the country. English would no longer be taught in the school or the home, and the only persons who would use English would be the populace, who would not of course come into close contact with the new ruling civilization of the country. They would speak their natural speech, the English of the people, and the old "good English" would become extinct and would be crowded out by the "incorrect English" of the uneducated and heedless part of the population. All who spoke English at all might then say "You was,"

instead of "You were"; "He ain't," instead of "He is n't"; perhaps "He done it," instead of "He did it"; and a thousand similar uses which are now held in check by the standards of careful English would become general. For a time, then, we should all together be "uneducated" and "popular." But suppose now that after several generations this Japanese invasion and the prestige of things Japanese should pass over, and that English should begin to reassert itself. Soon the educative and conservative instinct would set to work. The more thoughtful part of the people would again construct a system of the language, and again we should have rules of grammar, a correct speech, at the side of an incorrect one. But the new correct speech would be based simply upon the usage of the people of this later generation, and consequently it would contain much that the earlier generation regarded as incorrect. After the language had passed through the popular stage and had emerged again into a cultivated stage, "You was," "He ain't," and "He done it" might very well be the only possible correct forms. This, as has been said, is what happened in the Middle English period. The old standards of conventional propriety and correctness were more or less forgotten, the language followed the free and unregulated impulses of the people, and consequently when it rose again to the position of a stable and classical literary language in the time of Chaucer and his predecessors, it was a very different language from what it had been in the time of Alfred and Ælfric. It is not necessary, however, or even reasonable, to regard the language of the Middle English period as a corrupt and degenerate form of Old English, for these terms suppose that

ST. THOMAS COLLEGE
LIBRARY

the language of the later period is less admirable and effective than that of the earlier. It is better to speak of it as a development from, or an evolution out of, Old English. For it does not follow that the popular dialect of a language is any less capable of doing all that language is expected to do than the conventional "correct" speech. It often happens that it is more capable, and one of the main sources of strength in the English language is the frequency and the ease with which it renews its vigor by drawing from the living and ever-flowing well of popular speech.

The inflections of the Middle English period are largely the inflections of the Old English period in a disappearing stage. Owing to that change in word accent which has just been mentioned, the final syllables of words, especially inflectional syllables, tended to become weak and indistinct in pronunciation. This tendency is already apparent in the late Old English period, manifesting itself first in the ending *-um* of the dative plural of nouns and of adjectives, in the time of Ælfric. This ending gradually became vague and uncertain, appearing in the various forms *-un*, *-on*, *-en*, *-an*, the last form becoming the predominating one by the end of the Old English period. The most important inflectional development, however, of the early Middle English period consisted in the leveling of all unstressed end vowels under the vowel *-e* (pronounced like the second syllable of "sooner," with the *r* silent, i. e., "soon-uh"). The effect of this change upon the inflectional system of the noun, for example, will be seen by substituting this vowel *-e* for the various vowels given in the table of noun endings in § 3. The result would

be the following scheme of noun inflections in Middle English:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nominative	-, -e.	*Nominative*	-, -e, -es, -en.
Genitive	-e, -es, -en.	*Genitive*	-e, -ene.
Dative	-, -e, -en.	*Dative*	-en.
Accusative	-, -e, -en.	*Accusative*	-, -e, -es, -en.

Several important consequences followed this leveling of the distinctive Old English vowel endings under the vowel *-e*. In the first place, the grouping of the nouns into classes, or types, of declension had largely to be given up, for the principle of this classification was the difference in vowel ending. The two classes which remained were the class of the strong and weak nouns, the strong nouns being those that formed their genitive singular and nominative and accusative plurals in *-es*, the weak nouns those that used the ending *-en* for these and other forms. Moreover, with the breaking down of the different classes of declension passed away also grammatical gender. All inflections being leveled under the general inflections *-e*, *-es*, *-en*, there was no longer any reason, or indeed any means, for keeping up the distinctions of grammatical gender, and words were used as they are in Modern English, without gender, except in so far as they state, by their logical meaning, the sex of the objects which they designate. The inflection of a typical strong noun in Middle English is that of *ston* (the vowel *a* having changed to *o* in the Middle English period), of a typical weak noun, that of *sterre*, "star," in the following paradigms; letters which are enclosed within parentheses are such as are sometimes dropped

in the early Middle English period and are altogether dropped in the later Middle English period.

Singular.		Singular.	
Nominative	ston	*Nominative*	sterre
Genitive	stones	*Genitive*	sterre(n)
Dative	ston(e)	*Dative*	sterre(n)
Accusative	ston	*Accusative*	sterre(n)
Plural.		**Plural.**	
Nominative	stones	*Nominative*	sterren
Genitive	ston(en)e, stones	*Genitive*	sterr(en)e
Dative	stonen, stones	*Dative*	sterren
Accusative	stones	*Accusative*	sterren

The tendency of all nouns was to fall into these two groups, the *ston-stones* group, and the *sterre-sterren* group. The *ston-stones* group, as the more numerous group, tended to impose itself upon the *sterre-sterren* group, so that besides these forms and contemporary with them are often found the forms *sterre*, *sterres*.

The loss of grammatical gender in the noun naturally led to the loss of agreement in inflection between the noun and its adjective, so far as gender is concerned. The same leveling of inflectional endings took place in the adjective as in the noun; the only one which persisted after the loss of those indicative of gender was the vowel *-e*, which served to mark the plural number and the weak inflection of the adjective. The inflection of the Middle English adjective *god*, "good," would, therefore, be as follows:

Strong.	Weak.
Singular, all cases and genders, *god*.	*Singular*, all cases and genders, *gode*.
Plural, all cases and genders, *gode*.	*Plural*, all cases and genders, *gode*.

An example of a strong singular would be the phrase *A yong Squyer* (from Chaucer's Prolog to *The Canterbury Tales*, l. 79); a strong plural would be *and smale fowles* (ibid., l. 9; it should be remembered that every vowel is pronounced in Middle English); a weak singular is the phrase *The yonge sonne*, and a weak plural, the phrase *The tendre croppes* (both ibid., l. 7).

In the case of the definite article, the forms with initial *s*, that is *se* and *seo*, gave up this *s* for þ (th), by analogy to the majority of the forms of the article, which begin with þ. This gave for the nominative singular forms *þe*, *þeo*, *þæt*. But by a regular phonetic development, the vowel of *þeo* became the same as that of *þe*, and with the loss of grammatical gender in the noun, the separate neuter form *þæt* was given up as an article, its place being taken by the form *þe* of the masculine and feminine; no longer needed as an article, the form *þæt* itself persisted with changed value as a demonstrative pronoun. Having gone as far as this, analogy then operated still further, and there being little need felt for inflecting the article in the other cases and for gender, since it was readily assumed that the article was of the same case and gender as the noun with which it went, the single fixed form *þe* (the) established itself for all genders, numbers, and cases of the article. The main principle, therefore, which operated in the simplification of the definite article is that of substitution, one single type form crowding out all the dozen or more inflections of the Old English article.

Inflection of the verb as strong and weak, or irregular and regular, persisted in the Middle English period, but from early Middle English times there was a tendency

Here begynnyth the Pardonner his tale

In flanderys whilhom dwellede a cumpaynye
Of zonge folk that haūtedȳ folye
As ryot hasard stewys ⁊ tauernys
Where as with harpys lutys ⁊ geternys
They dañce ⁊ pleye at deis bothe day ⁊ nyght
And ete ⁊ drynke also ouyr here myzt
Thor whiche they don the deuyl sacryfise
With inne that deuyll tēple cursede wyse
By supfluyte abominable
Here othis been so greete ⁊ so dampnable
That it is gresely for to here hē swere
Oure blyssede lordis body they to tere
Hem thouzte that Jewis rente hȳ not J nough
And eche of hem atotherys sȳne lough
And thāne ryzt a non comyn Tumbesteris
Ffetyse ⁊ smale ⁊ zynge frutesteris
Syngeris with harpys Baudis wafereris
Whiche been the [illegible] offiscyys

THE BEGINNING OF CHAUCER'S "PARDONER'S TALE."
From Cambridge University Library MS. G. G. 4. 27, folio 306.
(For description, see Appendix.)

on the part of strong verbs to become weak, for example, Old English *wēpan*, *wēop*, beside Middle English *wepen*, *wepte*, "weep," "wept." This tendency, which was developed still further in the Modern English period, and which is still operative, was due to the fact that the weak verbs were the more numerous, as well as being the simpler and more readily apprehended manner of tense formation. The weak verbs thus tended to become the type form, crowding out by analogy to them many old strong verbs and attracting to their class all new verbs that entered the language. Examining the description of verb inflections for the Old English period given above, it will be seen that the general rule of the leveling of inflectional vowels under the vowel *-e* affected a considerable number of verb forms. The endings *-að*, *-iað* of the present plural became *-eð*, like the third singular. The endings *-e*, *-a*, and *-að*, *-iað* of the imperative became respectively *-e* and *-eð*. The infinitive endings *-an*, *-ian*, *-anne* became *-en*, *-enne*. In the preterite plural the *-on*, *-don* endings became *-en*, *-den*. Other changes were due to different causes. The ending of the present participle *-ende* tended to fall together with certain nouns naming actions which ended regularly in *-ung*, *-ing*, e. g., *langung*, "desire, longing," and which in Old English were distinctly felt as nouns and not as parts of the verb. Their similarity in form, however, and also in meaning, attracted the present participle to these nouns, with the result that the *-ende* participial inflection was given up, and the noun in *-ung*, *-ing*, and the present participle became indistinguishable in form, both with the ending *-ing*. Another simplification that tended to take place affected the preterite

tenses. In the Old English strong verb, the preterite plural stem was frequently different from the preterite singular, and the past participle often differed from both. In Middle English the three preterite stems tended to become alike, to simplify under one form, just as the forms of the article all tended to simplify under the type form *the*. Thus the Old English verb *bindan*, *band*, *bundon*, *bunden*, became in Middle English *binde*, *bound*, *bound*. This leveling never became complete, as in the case of the article, and we still have in Modern English verbs like *sing*, *sang*, *sung*; *drive*, *drove*, *driven*; the simplification, however, affected a considerable number of verbs.

5. **The Inflections of the Modern English Period.** Altho the Modern English period is called the period of lost inflections, it should be understood that this term is used with relative, and not absolute, meaning. All inflections have not been lost in the Modern English period, altho compared with those of the Middle English or the Old English period they have dwindled to a very small number. Nevertheless the language still remains an inflectional language, and for the expression of certain ideas no other means than inflection has been devised. The developments in the Modern English period arise from the further carrying out of the two tendencies of the Middle English period, first the tendency towards obscuring the vowels of inflectional syllables, and second, the tendency towards simplification by the substitution of one type form in the place of a variety of forms. In the passage from the Middle English to the Modern English period, the language did not again become merely a popular dialect which later was elevated to the dignity of a standard literary

language, as had occurred in the transition from the Old English to the Middle English period. On the contrary, from the end of the Middle English time to the present day the language has been watched with increasing care and vigilance. It has been systematized, regulated, purified; in short, it has tended to become more and more an established and settled literary and conventional language. The changes, consequently, which have taken place in the Modern English period have been comparatively slow and comparatively few in number. The difference between the English of the year 1900 and the year 1500 is much less than that between the English of the year 1250 and the year 1000. The Modern English has been a regulating, refining, systematizing period, rather than a revolutionizing, reconstructing period.

The final result, in the early Modern English period, of the weakening of inflectional vowels was, as has been stated, their complete loss. Thus starting with the Old English dissyllabic noun *nam-a*, "name," we get in Middle English the form *nam-e*, still a dissyllable; but in Modern English we have *name*, a monosyllable, the final *-e* having no other value than to indicate the length of the radical vowel. Likewise the Old English plural *stan-as*, the Middle English *ston-es*, becomes Modern English *ston(e)s;* and the Old English genitive *stan-es*, Middle English *ston-es*, is Modern English *ston(e)s*, with an apostrophe as a mechanical device to distinguish the possessive from the plural. With the loss of the final *-e* disappeared also the last remnant of concord between the adjective and its noun. For where Middle English indicated agreement in plural number

and indicated the weak inflection of the adjective by the inflectional *-e,* Modern English, through the loss of this inflection, lost also the grammatical distinctions, and uses now only one adjective form in all positions. The definite article, having leveled all its forms under the type form *the*, had already in the Middle English period developed as far as possible. The verb underwent the same changes in the loss of final syllables that other words experienced: thus the Old English infinitive *wep-an* became Middle English *wep-en*, and this by the loss of the final syllable and the regular change in the radical vowel became Modern English *weep*.

As important as these changes due to inflectional loss, are those which were brought about by substitution. Thus in the nouns the two type declensions which were preserved in Middle English, the strong and the weak, the strong forming its plural by means of the ending *-es*, the weak by means of the ending *-en*, tended to simplify under the type of the strong nouns, which were the more numerous. The result was that where Chaucer wrote *treen*, "trees," *been*, "bees," *shoon*, "shoes," and so with a great many other nouns, we now use the common *-s* ending for all plurals. The only exceptions to this rule (aside from a few words like *tooth*, *teeth*, which form their plurals by internal inflection) and the only survivals of the old weak inflection in Modern English are the words *ox-en*, plural of *ox*, *children*, and *brethren*, plurals of *child* and *brother*.

Substitution affected the old genitive, our modern possessive, in a remarkable way. The genitive ending *-es* in Old English was the mark of the genitive singular, masculine and neuter, of the noun. It then became

a type form for all genitives, feminine as well as masculine and neuter, in the singular. The Old English genitive plural inflection for all genders was *-a*, *-ena*, which in Middle English became *-e*, *-ene*. In Modern English, inflectional loss would have deprived the genitive of any ending in the plural. Instead, however, the genitive singular ending became typical not only for all genders of the singular, but for the plural as well. The ending *-es* was felt, therefore, as a generalized inflection standing for the genitive or possessive relation. We get, consequently, as the general type form of the singular noun in Modern English, *stone*, except *stone's*, the genitive or possessive, which in writing and printing has an apostrophe before the *-s* to distinguish the word from the plural. A similar mechanical device is used to mark the genitive or possessive plural from the possessive singular and the other forms of the plural; here, however, the apostrophe is placed after the *-s*, as in *stones'*, tho the phonetic value of the word is the same as that of the possessive singular. We have, therefore, as type of the plural inflection, the common form *stones*, with the possessive plural *stones'*. This use of the apostrophe as a mechanical device to indicate the possessive is of comparatively late origin. It became established only at the end of the seventeenth and in the early eighteenth centuries as a result of the growing influence of printing and of printers' rules. It is of course a device for the eye and not for the ear. Before the use of the apostrophe, however, another method of indicating the possessive had become pretty general in writing, the use of the pronoun *his* instead of the genitive ending *-s*, as in *God his wrath*, for *God's wrath*. This pronoun *his* was never

pronounced in spoken speech, but, like the apostrophe it served merely as a visual symbol to indicate the possessive relation. In proof of this the remark of the Elizabethan versifier, Gabriel Harvey, the friend of Spenser, may be cited. Harvey is complaining that the English spelling of his day was misleading to the poet, because often words were spelled as dissyllables but pronounced as monosyllables, and continues thus: "But see what absurdities thys yl fauored Orthographye, or rather Pseudography, hathe engendred, and howe one errour still breedeth and begetteth an other. Haue wee not *Mooneth* for *Moonthe*, *sithence* for *since*, *whilest* for *whilste*, *phantasie* for *phansie*, *euen* for *evn*, *Diuel* for *Divl*, *God hys wrath* for *Goddes wrath*, and a thousande of the same stampe." [1]

Modern English has developed special forms of the possessive when the possessive stands in absolute position, that is, when it is not immediately followed by the noun which it modifies. Thus we say, "This is my hat," or, in the archaic form, "This is thy hat"; but "This hat is mine, thine." In their origins the *thine*, *mine* forms of the possessive are direct survivals of the Old English genitives, *ðīn*, *mīn*. Formerly, that is, in the Middle English period, these full forms were retained before words beginning with a vowel sound, as they are still in Modern English poetry, e. g., "Mine eyes have seen the glory of the

[1] Gabriel Harvey, *Of Reformed Versifying*, written in 1579-1580, and reprinted in Smith, *Elizabethan Critical Essays*, I, 120. Notice in this passage how freely and inconsistently Harvey uses the final *-e*, e. g., *hathe*, *howe*, *moonthe*, *whilste*, *thousande*, *stampe*. Of course none of these final *-e's* were pronounced. At the close of the Middle English period when the final *-e's* had lost all phonetic value, they were often retained in spelling, but also often dropped, and even were indiscriminately added to the spelling of words to which they had never really belonged.

coming of the Lord"; but the abbreviated forms *my*, *thy*, tended to become general, especially before words beginning with a consonant. When special forms were required for the possessive in absolute position, the full forms *mine*, *thine*, were naturally chosen, and *my*, *thy*, *his*, *our*, and *your* became the only forms for the possessive in adjective position. But the forms *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, and *their*, in absolute position, also underwent a change. In Old English there were not two forms of these pronouns, the same form being used in both the adjective and absolute positions. In Middle English the unchanged forms continued to be used for some time, as in the Wycliffe-Purvey Bible, Luke vi, 20: *the kyngdom of God is youre.* But gradually a distinctive genitive ending for these absolute possessives was felt to be necessary, and two forms came into use. The first was made by adding the regular *-s* genitive ending, as the type indication of the possessive relation, giving *ours*, *yours*, and of course *his*, which needed no addition. But by analogy to the *mine*, *thine* forms, influenced perhaps also by the possessive adjective *own*, possessives with an *-n* ending were formed, giving *mine*, *thine*, *ourn*, *yourn*, *theirn*, etc. Examples of this second kind of formation are found in the Wycliffe-Purvey Bible, as in Mark xii, 7: *the eritage schal be ourun;* Matthew v, 3: *the kyngdom of hevenes is herne.* This form of the absolute possessive persists in Modern English only in popular speech, the standard or conventional use having become *yours*, *hers*, *theirs*, etc.[1]

[1] Some of the dialects of England have carried this method of possessive formation over into the nominative, e. g., *shisn*, composed of the nominative *she*, to which are added first the possessive *-s*, and then the absolute possessive *-n* endings. See Wright, *English Dialect Grammar*, p. 275.

Substitution affected also the forms of the personal pronouns in an interesting way. In the first person, the correspondence between Modern English and the earlier periods is close, Modern English *I*, *mine*, *me*, and *we*, *our*, *us*, being the direct representation of Old English *ic*, *mīn*, *mē*, and *wē*, *ūre*, *ūs*. In the second person, however, the difference is great. This change started with the nominative plural, Old English *gē*, which gave our Biblical English *ye*, as in *What went ye out for to see?* For this *ye*, however, was early substituted the form *you*, which was the form for the dative and accusative, derived from Old English *ēow*. The possessive form was also *your* from *eower*, and the preponderance of the spellings *you*, *you-r* naturally led to its substitution in the nominative, giving *you*. In the singular the old forms ðū, ðīn, ðē gave regularly our Biblical English *thou*, *thine*, *thee*. In the late Middle English period, however, the *thou*, *thine*, *thee* forms tended to be given up for the *you*, *your*, *you* forms of the plural. This substitution was brought about through the influence of the French language, in which the plural form of the pronoun was the polite form, even in addressing a single individual. The singular pronoun was used only in familiar address, in the conversation of intimate friends or the members of a family. Both forms of the singular have persisted to modern times, but the forms *thou*, *thine*, *thee* are now used in literary speech, and then only in poetry and elevated discourse; the

The New English Dictionary cites the following example from the Hampshire dialect: "Let thee and I go our own waay, and we 'll let she go shisn." Another analogical formation, sometimes heard in the language of children, is the possessive *mies* for *my*; *mies* is to *my*, as *yours*, *theirs* are to *your*, *their*.

real singular is now *you*, *your*, *you*. In some dialects, especially in England, the *thou*, *thine*, *thee* forms also persist in popular spoken use. In the earlier Modern English period, in the time of Shakspere, and as late as the early eighteenth century, the two forms *thou* and *you* existed in good English side by side, and they could be and were used in current colloquial speech with good effect. The form *thou* was used in the conversation of friends, or of a husband and wife, the transition to *you* indicating a slightly more formal tone in conversation. Thus, for example, in the comedies of Etherege and Vanbrugh, two men friends or two women friends (but not a man and a woman, unless they are husband and wife), usually address each other as *thou*, but to others they are *you*. In Etherege's *She Would if She Could*, Sir Frederick, a boisterous swashbuckler, noisy and familiar, uses *thou* to Mrs. Rich, the effect being one of a sort of friendly, good-natured impertinence, Mrs. Rich being only his friend and therefore properly to be addressed by *you*. In speaking to servants and those of inferior social rank, and in giving orders, *thou* was also the form used. It was likewise used in contemptuous language, as in Sir Toby's advice to Sir Andrew Aguecheek, "If thou thou 'st him some thrice, it shall not be amiss" (*Twelfth Night*, III, 2). All this is what we should expect, for the language of familiar intercourse, of friendship, and of contempt is all on somewhat the same plane — that is, it is all the language of strongly colloquial and familiar color. It is interesting to observe that the forms *thou*, *thine*, and *thee* have been at all periods the ones used in prayer and generally in elevated discourse, and this is true even of

those periods in which *thou* is used as a mark of familiarity or of contempt. The polite forms *you*, *your*, *you* have never been used in addressing the Deity, probably, first of all because there was originally a feeling of incongruity in using what was fashionable or courtly language for this purpose; and now, of course, *you* is no longer courtly or fashionable, but too familiar to be used for lofty purposes. Moreover the language of poetry and prayer is always strongly traditional and conservative; it would consequently tend to preserve the old historical usage of the English tongue, and once the use of *thou* was fixed in sacred language, as in the prayer book and the English translation of the Bible, it would naturally be very influential in maintaining that usage through later periods. This feeling for *thou* as the only proper form to be used in addressing the Deity is well brought out in a passage of a sixteenth century work, *A Dialogue against the Feuer Pestilence*, printed in 1564.[1] A beggar, Mendicus, appears at a door soliciting alms, and recites part of the Lord's Prayer as follows: "Our father whiche art in heauen, hallowed be your name, your kyngdom come, your will be dooen in yearth as it is in heauen," etc., upon which he is ridiculed by Civis and Uxor, the gentlemen from whom he is soliciting alms, one of whom remarks, "Me thinke I doe heare a good manerly Begger at the doore, and well brought up. How reuerently he saieth his Pater Noster! he thous not God, but you[s] him."

The discrepancy between the plural form *you* as a word of address to a single person disturbed greatly the peace of mind of the founders of the Society of Friends

1. Early English Text Society, Extra Series, Vol. LII, p. 5.

or Quakers. They observed that the Bible, meaning of course the English translation, always used *thou* to one and *you* to many. They thought it not fitting, therefore, that men should use a more dignified form of expression in addressing each other than they used in addressing the Lord. Moreover *you* as a word of address to a single person is not consistent with the well-known rule of grammar, according to which *you* is plural, and therefore on that score also its use as singular was wrong. This is just the kind of linguistic crotchet which we might expect to stick in the mind of a half-educated person like George Fox, the founder of the Society of Friends; and it is not surprising to see him come forth in defense of *Thou* to *One* and *You* to *Many*, to use his own battle-cry. He published a work called "*A Battle-Door*[1] *for Teachers and Professors to learn Singular and Plural;* You *to* Many, and Thou *to* One: *Singular* One, Thou; *Plural* Many, You," which was printed in London, for "Robert Wilson and to be sold at his Shop at the Signe of the Black-spread-Eagle and Wind-mil in Martins le Grand, 1660." The teachers and professors of his day Fox takes to task in the following fashion: "Do not they speak false English, false Latine, false Greek, false Hebrew, false Caldee, false Syriack, and Arabick, false Dutch, false French; and false to the other Tongues, that followes here in this Book, that doth not speak *thou* to *one*, what ever he be, Father,

[1] A battle-door, as the word is used here, means a primer. Literally the word means a wooden bat, shaped somewhat like a tennis racket. But it is used in this metaphorical sense because the early primer, or horn-book, consisted of a cardboard with the abc, etc., on it, surrounded by a wooden rim with a handle, and covered with a transparent piece of horn, the whole being shaped somewhat like a flat bat or racket.

Mother, King, or Judge; is he not a Novice and Unmannerly, and an Ideot and a Fool, that speaks *You* to *one*, which is not to be spoken to a *singular*, but to *many?* O Vulgar Professors and Teachers, that speaks Plural when they should Singular, *lapis*, a stone, *lapides*, stones, that is, more than one. Come you Priests and Professors, have you not learnt your Accidence?" [1]

This avoidance of *you* as a pronoun of address in the singular has persisted to this day among the Friends. But the old, and historically the correct, form *thou* as nominative has been given up for the type form *thee*, used for both nominative and objective, as in "Thee will have to get thee another coat." In thus using the objective *thee* as the type form, the Friends have done exactly what the standard language has done, since the nominative here is historically *ye* and the objective is *you*, from Old English *ge* and *eow*, the two forms being simplified under one, the objective form *you*.

Substitution has also contributed largely to the simplification of the Modern English verb system. The limiting of the principal parts by reducing the preterite tenses to one type form has already been mentioned. The personal inflections have also been simplified, especially in the present tense. Here, through the combined influence of inflectional leveling and loss, and of substitution, working through several dialects of the Middle English period, all forms have been reduced to a single type, e. g. (*I*, *you*, *we*, *you*, *they*) *sing*, with the exception of the third singular, (*he*) *sings*, which has an inflectional *-s*. The elevated language has been more conservative, preserving the special forms for the

[1] Fox, *A Battle-Door for Teachers*, pp. 2–3.

singular (*I*) *sing*, (*thou*) *singest*, (*he*) *singeth*, but the plural is the same in both elevated and normal style.

6. **Conclusions**. The general effect of inflectional loss and substitution has been to change to a considerable extent the structure of the English language. From a language in which each word was closely and formally united to some other word by agreement in grammatical form, that is from a synthetic language, English has developed into a language in which the words, so far as formal concord or agreement goes, are almost altogether free and independent. The language has developed type forms which can stand in any position, their relationships being indicated largely by the order of the words as they are put together, not by inflectional elements. This kind of language is called analytic, in contrast to synthetic, because in its structure it is made up of independent units which may be easily detached from each other, whereas in the synthetic structure, the language binds the word group into a whole in which all the words are mutually dependent for their form on their place in the group. This will be made clear by an illustration. The adjective *old* in our modern analytic language may modify any noun of any gender, number, or case; it is a perfectly free, universal word-unit. In a synthetic stage of the language, however, as in Old English, the adjective *old* had to take on various forms according to the gender, number, and case of the noun, and according as it was inflected strong or weak. Thus the Modern English phrases *the old man* and *the old men*, changes only the word *man*, the other words being type forms that modify the plural as well as the singular. In Old English,

however, we should have to change all three words, *sē ealda man* for the singular, and *þā ealdan men* for the plural.

It will be seen from this example that the modern analytic language has in many respects gained in economy over the older synthetic language. By the use of type forms, the modern language saves much useless repetition. Thus in the two Modern English phrases cited in the preceding paragraph, the ideas of singular and plural are each expressed once by *man* and *men*, and need not, so far as power of conveying the thought is concerned, be expressed by the modifying words. But in Old English not only does *man* express the singular idea, but it is expressed also by the inflection in *sē* and *ealda;* and in the case of the plural, the idea of plurality is expressed three times as well, once by *men*, once by *ealdan* and once by *þā*. Nothing is gained by this threefold repetition of the idea of plurality, and Modern English is much the simpler and more reasonable in allowing it to be assumed that when one uses the noun *men*, adjectives which limit this noun are plural also. In the same way the synthetic language has to repeat the idea of gender or of case with each new modifying word, whereas in Modern English this repetition is likewise avoided by the use of type forms for all genders and cases.

One further illustration of the change from synthetic to analytic structure, and the advantage of the latter over the former, may be cited, the example being taken from Modern English and Latin, the latter a more highly inflectional, and therefore more synthetic, language than any period of English. The English relative pronoun *who*

is a type form, expressing merely the interrogative idea without limitation of gender or number. To translate the English sentence, *Who did it?* into Latin, however, we should have to give four sentences, *Quis hoc fecit?* the pronoun being the singular masculine interrogative; *Quae hoc fecit?* the pronoun being the singular feminine; *Qui hoc fecerunt?* the plural masculine; and *Quae hoc fecerunt?* the plural feminine. Since the question *Who did it?* usually contains no implication of gender and number, and is merely a question for information, it is manifestly better to have a general type form in which to cast the question, than to be compelled to make it specific as to gender and number as the Latin must do. The English analytic form of expression answers more exactly to the logic of the situation, and is consequently to be regarded as better than the synthetic form of expression.[1]

The question naturally arises whether Modern English has carried the process of simplification and substitution as far as it can, and if not, if it is likely to carry it further. As to the first half of this question, it is obvious that there is room for further simplification in the English language, and that the language would be the gainer by further simplifications. These simplifying substitutions are indeed carried out in strata of the language which do not feel the restraining force of the conventional and standard speech. Thus we have all observed that children strive to substitute the type plural in *-s* for those few irregular plurals that survive in English,

[1] See Jespersen, *Progress in Language*, pp. 30–31; and see Jespersen's book, *passim*, for a detailed consideration of the advantages of an analytic language over a synthetic one.

giving thus *foots*, *tooths*, for *feet*, *teeth*, etc. It is a general tendency with children also to substitute the regular or weak forms for all the irregular or strong forms of the verb, giving *grow*, *growed*, *growed*, for *grow*, *grew*, *grown; drive*, *drived*, *drived*, for *drive*, *drove*, *driven*, etc. These usages of child language may all be paralleled by usages of uneducated adults, since children and the uneducated are on the same plane so far as the restraining power of rule or convention in language is concerned. Thus the very common tendency of the uneducated to use only one form for the past tense and past participle of the verb, usually the past participle being made to do duty for both, as in *He done it*, and *I seen him*, is exactly this process of type substitution. Logically there is no reason why we should have more than two principal parts in the verb, one for present time and one for past time, *I do*, and *I did*, or *done*, *I see*, and *I saw*, or *seen*, with which the auxiliaries can then build up the various compound tenses and forms. The regular verbs, like *walk*, *walked*, *walked*, and many of the irregular, have and need only two principal parts. The substitution of *seen* for *saw* and *done* for *did* is exactly similar in kind to other substitutions which took place in earlier periods, and which have been accepted into the standard language. Thus the verb *cling*, *clung*, *clung*, historically should have three parts, *cling*, *clang*, *clung*, like *sing*, *sang*, *sung; ring*, *rang*, *rung*, etc. So also the verb *shine*, *shone*, *shone* is derived from the Old English verb *scīnan*, *scān*, *scinon*, *scinen*, which should have given regularly *shine*, *shone*, *shinnen*, like *ride*, *rode*, *ridden; write*, *wrote*, *written*, and numerous other verbs. Instead, however, it has substituted a type form

for the preterite tenses, using for this purpose the regular form of the preterite singular.

But the question whether or not Modern English will carry out further these simplifications by type substitution is one which does not depend upon precedent, or, to any considerable extent, upon the reasonableness and advantage of such changes. The English language of to-day has become so fixed by long use, by the systematic statements of it which have been made by the grammarians and rhetoricians, by the conventionalizing tendencies which always accompany the higher forms of civilization, that changes in such obvious features of language as inflection find it extremely hard to make their way into good use. The popular dialects will continue to grow and develop in a freer and less trammeled way, but the cultivated speech, tho no less subject to continuous change, is more likely to change in subtler ways than by the direct substitution of one form for another.

V

ENGLISH SOUNDS

1. The Study of English Sounds. Altho one of the most recent branches of linguistic study, the study of sounds, or phonetics, to give the subject its technical name, has been one of the most productive of valuable results. The study of the sounds of past periods has made the science of etymology possible, and it has been one of the chief means of determining the relationships of languages. Grimm's Law, for example, is a phonetic law. The study of contemporary sounds also is helpful in various ways. It is of great practical value to all who have anything to do with foreign languages, or with the earlier stages of their own language. There is no quicker or more certain way of apprehending an unfamiliar sound than by observing how, that is, by just what positions and movements of the vocal organs it is made, and then by repeating these positions and movements for one's self. Another reason for the study of the sounds of contemporary speech is based on the general principle that we all owe it to ourselves to know what we do, and to choose to do those things that will conduce most to our happiness and welfare. It might seem that it could be taken for granted that every one naturally knew just how his speech sounded, without giving any special attention to the matter. Experiment and observation have shown, however, that this is far

from being true. One who has not given considerable attention to the study of speech-sounds does not usually hear his own speech accurately and justly. He needs the gift to hear himself as others hear him. Time and again it has been shown that a person thinks he says one thing when actually the sound which he utters is different. Often if one's speech could be recorded on the disc of a phonograph, when reproduced it would not be recognized and would be disclaimed by the person who uttered it.

The practical bearing of all this is obvious. Pronunciation and grammar are without doubt the most generally applied, and, on the whole, the simplest and most effective tests of cultivation and education. As Holmes in the *Autocrat* says, "a movement or a phrase often tells you all you want to know about a person." No doubt there is danger of drawing too sweeping inferences from the speech of others, a danger to which all, the critic and the criticised, are equally liable. Nevertheless, in the end speech remains the surest and most convenient index of the social habits and the intellectual life of the person who uses it. It behooves all, therefore, to take cognizance of the matter of their speech, especially of the subtle and elusive matter of pronunciation. Every person owes it to himself to know what the facts of his pronunciation are and how these facts impress other persons with whom he is thrown in contact. When he has a just appreciation of all these facts, he can then order his conduct as seems wisest and best to him. Before we can proceed, however, to the intelligent discussion of historical sound changes or of specific questions of contemporary pronunciation, it will be necessary, first, to

describe briefly the organs of speech and the method of sound-production in speaking, and, second, to settle upon some terminology, or representation, of sounds by which the various sounds may be certainly designated and distinguished.

2. **The Production of English Sounds.** Sound, so far as we are concerned with it in the study of language, may be defined as the sensation of hearing produced by the modifications of a column of air in its passage from the lungs through the organs of speech. The specific character of the sound varies as the column of air is variously modified by the different organs through which it passes. The production of speech-sound, therefore, is essentially not different from the production of musical sound in a wind instrument, as a horn or a clarinet.

Phonetics, however, which is the study of the sounds of language, is not concerned with all the sounds which the human organs of speech are capable of producing, such as shrieks, cries, groans, and so forth, but only with articulate sounds, that is, those sounds which are joined together, or articulated, for the formation of syllables, then of words, phrases, and sentences. Moreover, a language, English for example, does not use all the possible articulate sounds which the voice can produce, but makes a selection from a comparatively much larger number, which become then the sound material of the language. Different languages make a choice of different sounds; and we have sounds in English which are not used in French and German, and French and German, on the other hand, have sounds which we do not use in English. Yet we know from the fact that Englishmen

learn French and German, and Frenchmen and Germans learn English, that all, with practice, are equally capable of producing all the sounds of the various languages. Each special language, therefore, makes what seems to be an arbitrary choice of a certain number of possible sounds; and we may consequently define English phonetics as the study of the sounds used in the construction of English speech.

The organs mainly concerned in the production of speech sound are the lungs; the larynx, in which are the glottis and the vocal chords; the cavity of the mouth, in which the tongue, the palate, the lips and the teeth are important modifiers of sound; and the cavity of the nose. The lungs are concerned with the production of sound only in that they send forth the column of air which later is modified by the more special organs of voice so as to produce sound. When one produces sound by playing a wind instrument the column of air passes unmodified by the speech organs into the more distant modifying agent, the horn, or flute, or whatever the instrument may be. Under normal conditions it is only the expiratory column of air that is used in the production of speech sound, the inspired air being productive of sound only in the case of sighing and a few interjections.

The larynx, or voice box, is the first place at which the air from the lungs on its passage outward may meet with any obstruction. The larynx is really a part of the windpipe, or trachea, and leads from the rear end of the opening of the nose and mouth to the lungs. From the back of the mouth a second tube, the gullet, or esophagus, leads into the stomach. The common space at the

back of the mouth from which these two canals branch is called the pharynx. The entrance to the trachea, or windpipe, is provided with a valve or lid, called the epiglottis, which can be lowered in the act of swallowing so as to prevent food from passing down the trachea. When for any reason the epiglottis fails to work, as it does some times, and portions of food or water make their way into the trachea, we perform the operation popularly known as "swallowing by the Sunday throat."

The larynx itself is a circular, or nearly circular, and tubular combination of cartilages and muscles. The largest of these cartilages, the thyroid or shield-like cartilage, forms the main structure of the larynx; it can be felt from the outside of the throat, and is commonly known as the Adam's apple. Another important cartilage is the cricoid, or ring cartilage, which forms the base of the voice box or larynx, and to which the vocal chords are attached. The muscles of the larynx pass from one cartilage to the other and have as their chief function the contraction and loosening of the vocal chords. These chords are two in number, and they are attached to the base of the larynx, passing approximately over the middle of the opening of the larynx. They are not to be thought of as chords like violin strings, for one side of each is completely attached to the sides of the voice box. The vibrating part is only the free outer edge of each, which, as has been stated, can be tightened or loosened by the aid of certain muscles. The space between the two outer edges of the vocal chords, which varies of course in width according to the tension of the chords, is called the glottal rift, or *rima glottidis*. When

the edges of the chords are relaxed, allowing a wide rift between them, the breath from the lungs passes through this space without setting the chords in vibration, and, consequently, no sound is produced *in the larynx*. This last qualification is important, because the air from the lungs may still meet with some obstruction from the organs of the mouth or nose, in which case sound would be produced. If it does not, it passes out of the nose or mouth almost noiselessly, and the process is simply that of breathing. When the rift is narrowed, however, by the stretching of the vocal chords, the passage of the air makes the chords vibrate, and the sound which we call *voice* is produced. It should be clearly understood that the word voice is here used in a restricted and special sense. It does not mean any sound produced by the organs of speech, but only those sounds in the production of which the vocal chords are set in vibration. Such sounds are called voiced sounds, others are voiceless. In whispering, voiceless sounds are produced in the same way as when they are given their full resonance; but in the whispering of voiced sounds the vocal chords do not vibrate, or vibrate only slightly, altho they are made tense, and the glottal rift is accordingly narrowed, as in the production of the full-voiced sounds.

We may now pass to those organs above the larynx which are important for the production of speech sound. They are the pharynx, the cavity of the mouth, and the cavity of the nose. These three spaces are together known as the *resonance chamber*, and they are of the greatest importance in the production of sound, because no column of air can proceed from the lungs which is not modified in some way by the resonance chamber. In

fact, all voice as it comes from the vocal chords would be the same, except for differences in loudness and softness, and it is the resonance chamber which determines the specific value of this sound as one vowel rather than another. By changing the shape of the resonance chamber, the speaker gets different vowel effects, just as the musician gets different tone effects from a tuba and a cornet, because the two instruments have tubes of different shapes and sizes, that is, have different resonance chambers. After it has passed through the larynx and into the pharynx, the breath from the lungs may then enter the cavity of the mouth, or of the nose, or both together. We shall consider, first, the cavity of the mouth, and, second, the nasal cavity.

The roof of the mouth is divided into two parts, the soft palate, or velum, at the back part of the mouth, and the hard palate at the front part. The hard palate is fixed and motionless, except as it moves with the motion of the jaws. But the velum (a Latin name meaning "veil") may be raised or lowered. When it is raised, it closes the entrance to the nasal cavity, when lowered it permits the air from the lungs to pass out equally through the nose and the mouth. Within the mouth the most important of the movable muscles is the tongue, the parts of which need no description. Beside the palate and tongue, the teeth, gums, and lips are also used in the production of sounds.

The nasal cavity or passage is a membrane-lined passage with no movable or muscular parts. It leads out from the pharynx and is narrower at both ends than at the middle, forming thus a good resonance chamber. The passage is divided in the nose by a septum or par-

tition, into a right and a left portion. As has been stated, the entrance to the nasal passage can be closed by raising the velum, in which case all breath passes out through the mouth. "Talking through the nose" is a popular misconception of the facts. The truth is that when one "talks through the nose," one does n't talk through the nose, as one should, but the velum is then raised, or the entrance to the nasal passage is closed because of the swelling due to cold or some other disturbance of normal conditions, and the unpleasant effect which results is due to the lack of that resonance which the sound should have received by passing through the nasal chamber. A "nasal twang" is due to the same cause. It is a general principle that all sounds should be given as much resonance as they are capable of receiving, and the speaker who has allowed himself to fall into the habit of speaking with the flat, unmusical quality of sound which results from the closing of the nasal passage, should cultivate a more open method of sound production. The difference between the closed and the open nasal passage may be easily observed by first imitating the speech of one suffering from a cold and then speaking with the full quality of sound which normally characterizes the correct use of the voice.

3. **Voiced and Voiceless Sounds.** Having described the main organs of speech, we may proceed now to some account of the modifications of sound produced by these various organs. The first important distinction is that between voiced and voiceless sounds. Voiced sounds, which are also called sonant sounds, are those in the production of which the vocal chords are set in vibration. All vowels are voiced, because vowels are

produced by the vibration of the vocal chords, the difference between vowels being caused by modification of the sound produced by these vibrations through changing the configuration of the resonance chamber. Some consonants are voiced, others are voiceless. Examples of voiced consonants are *g* in *go*, *b* in *boy*, *d* in *day*.

In the production of voiceless sounds, which are also called surd sounds, the vocal chords are not set in vibration, but the sound is produced through modification of the column of air by the various organs of speech, teeth, tongue, and lips, after it has passed through the rift of the glottis without moving the vocal chords. Examples of voiceless consonants are *p* in *pay*, *t* in *tin*, *k* (*c*) in *king*, *can*. By placing the finger on the Adam's apple one can, with a little practice, easily feel the vibration of the voice box in the production of voiced sounds, and can thus distinguish sounds which are voiced from those which are not, thus confirming the testimony of the ears. In pronouncing a voiceless consonant one should distinguish between the consonant and the vowel that accompanies it. The name of the letter *t*, for example, consists of the voiceless consonant *t*, followed by a vowel which is the same as the vowel in *tea*, *he*, *see*, etc. In forming consonants for the purpose of observing them, always distinguish between the consonant and any accompanying vowel.

4. **Vowels and Consonants.** When the passages through the mouth and through the nose are left open, so that the air, passing through the larynx and there setting the vocal chords in vibration, may continue without further obstruction through these passages to the outer air, a vowel sound is produced. The passage is widest

open in pronouncing the vowel *a* in *father;* it is variously modified in pronouncing the other vowels, but at no time is it completely closed, coming nearest to being so in pronouncing the vowel *ee* in *seen*, *keen*, etc. It should be noticed that vowels can be lengthened indefinitely in pronunciation, the only question being the amount of breath one has at one's disposal.

When the column of air from the lungs, as it approaches the outer air, is (a) completely stopped, or (b) completely stopped at one point but allowed to escape at another, the sound produced is a consonant. In the first case, when the column of air is completely stopped, the consonant produced is called a stop consonant or explosive, both names being descriptive of the method of formation of these sounds. Examples of stop or explosive consonants are *g*, *b*, *d*, *k*, *p*, *t*. Stop consonants, since they are produced by a sudden and momentary explosion of the breath, cannot be lengthened.

In the second case, when the column of air is only partly stopped in its escape to the outer air, the consonant produced is called a continuant consonant. Continuants are of various kinds, caused by the interference of different parts of the speech organs. They consist (1) of spirants, caused by the interference of the teeth and lips with the column of air; spirants may be voiced, as, for example, *v* in *vat ; s* (*z*) in *phrase ; th* in *father ;* or voiceless, like *f* in *fat ; c* (*s*) in *place ; th* in *thin ;* (2) of liquids or linguals, caused by the interference of the tongue with the column of air, as, for example, *l* and *r ;* (3) of nasals, caused by the complete obstruction of the exit through the mouth, causing thus all the air to pass through the nose; the examples are *m* and *n ;* (4) of

labials, caused by the interference of the lips, as in *w*. The continuants, like the vowels, may all be continued indefinitely in pronunciation as long as the breath holds out.

5. **Classification of Consonants**. Beside the classification of consonants as voiced and voiceless, stop or continuant, consonants are further classified and named according to the part of the mouth or nasal passage which is chiefly concerned in their production. Thus we have

(*a*) Labials or lip consonants. These may be either bilabials, e. g., *b*, *p*, *m*, *w*, in which both lips are instrumental in forming the respective sounds; or labio-dentals, e. g., *f*, *v*, in which lips and teeth are the main obstructions.

(*b*) Alveolar, or tongue and gum sounds. Examples are *d*, *t*, *z*, *s*. These sounds are formed by pressing the tip of the tongue against the gums just back of the upper front teeth. They are sometimes wrongly called dental consonants, on the supposition that the tongue in forming them is placed against the upper front teeth; this, however, is not the case in the normal English formation of these sounds, tho the French *t* is a real dental, the tongue being pressed hard against the upper teeth in the pronunciation of it.

(*c*) Dental, or tooth and tongue consonants. In the formation of this sound, found in English only in *th* as in *thine* or *father*, the tip of the tongue is pressed against the roots of the upper front teeth.

(*d*) Palatals, or tongue and palate consonants. These consonants are usually grouped in two classes: (1) those formed by the tongue and hard palate, called front palatals, as, for example, *g* in *give*; *k* in *keen*; *ch* in *chin*; *dg* in *ridge*; *sh* in *sheen*; *z* (spelled *s* or *z*) in *azure*, *pleasure*; (2) those formed by the tongue and the back or soft palate, called back palatals, or gutturals, or velars, as in *g* in *gone*; *k* (written *c*) in *cough*, *cold*. Note carefully the difference

between the initial consonants in *keen* and *cold*; *geese* and *gold*.

(*e*) Lingual, or tongue consonants, in which the tongue is chiefly instrumental in forming the sounds, as in *l*, *r*. There are various kinds of *l* and *r* in English, but *l* is usually alveolar-lingual, that is, the tongue is placed against the upper gums, and *r* is usually hard palate-lingual.

(*f*) Nasal or nose consonants, in the formation of which the nose and lips, or the nose and some other part of the mouth, are instrumental. Nasal consonants may be classified as (1) bilabial, as *m* in *man*; (2) alveolar, as *n* in *near*; (3) front palatal, as *ng* in *king* (observe that *ng* is pronounced as a single nasal consonant, not two consonants, *n* and *g*); (4) back palatal or guttural, as *ng* in *long* (again pronounced as a single consonant).

In fully describing and naming a consonant, therefore, it will be observed that there are three things to be noticed, first, whether it is a voiced or voiceless consonant; second, whether it is a stop or continuant; and, third, what parts of the vocal organs are chiefly instrumental in its formation. The following table gives a list of the most important English consonants from these three points of view:

		Bilabial.	Labio-dental.	Dental.	Alveolar.	Front palatal.	Back palatal.	Lingual.	Nasal.
Stops.	Voiced	b	...	...	d	g (as in *geese*)	g (as in *gold*)	...	...
	Voiceless	p	...	...	t	k (as in *keen*)	k (c) (as in *cold*)	...	...
Continuants.	Voiced	...	v	th (as in *father*)	z (as in *please*)	dg (as in *ridge*) z (as in *azure*)	...	l r	m n
	Voiceless	...	f	th (as in *thin*)	s	sh (as in *sheen*) ch (as in *chin*)	...	...	...

6. **Classification of Vowels.** The vowels lend themselves less readily to description and classification than the consonants, because the positions and movements of the organs of voice in the production of vowels are less easily observed and stated than they are in the production of consonants. Somewhat loosely, vowels are often spoken of as (a) front palatal vowels, in which the voiced sound is modified by narrowing the passage of the mouth by means of raising the tongue towards the hard palate, and (b) back palatal or guttural vowels, formed further back in the mouth, by the tongue and the soft palate. Front palatal vowels are *a* (in *man*); *e* (in *let*); *a* (in *hate*); *ey* (in *they*); *ay* (in *say*); *i* (in *kin*); *i* (in *machine*); *ee* (in *seen*). Back palatal or guttural vowels are *oo* (in *food*); *oo* (in *wood*, *good*); *o* (in *bone*); *o* (in *not*); *i* (in *mine*); *a* (in *father*); *a* (in *fall*). A loose distinction often made is that between close and open vowels, the tongue in the close vowel being raised further toward the roof of the mouth than in the open vowel. Thus the vowel *o* is said to be close in *note*, but open in *not;* the vowel *e* is said to be close in the borrowed word *fête* (or in the case of the same sound with different spelling, in the native words *mate*, *late*, etc.), but open in the word *men*. The mechanical device of placing the cedilla beneath the vowel to indicate the open quality is sometimes used, as in o̧, ȩ. The classification of vowels as close and open is not a good one, however, since o and o̧, e and ȩ, are, so far as sound goes, which is the essential matter, really two quite different vowels, tho written alike, and each, in an exact system, should have its distinctive name. Another distinction which is often loosely and incor-

rectly made is that between long and short vowels. The vowel *o* of *not* is said to be the short vowel, the long of which is exemplified in *note;* so also the vowel of *met* is said to be the short *e* sound, the vowel of *they*, the long *e* sound. But an examination of these sounds will show that *o* of *not* is not merely the *o* of *note* shortened, nor is *e* of *met* merely the shortened sound of the vowel of *they*. The difference is not merely that of length, but also of quality; and we have to do with two entirely separate and different vowel sounds in each case. In using the terminology long and short, care should be taken that the vowels so described are really of the same kind. Thus the first vowel of the word *motive* is the short sound of the vowel in *note*, the two sounds differing only in the degree to which they are prolonged, and the long vowel sound of *fate* is short in the first syllable of the compound *pay-roll*.

A real distinction which should be observed is that between simple vowels and diphthongs. A simple vowel, as its name indicates, is one which consists of only one vowel sound; a diphthong is a double sound which begins with one vowel quality and shades off at the end into another. The vowels of *note*, of *fate*, of *food* are all simple vowels; but the vowel of *house*, *now*, *slough* is a double sound, starting with the sound of *a* in *father*, and ending with the sound of *u*, giving the combination *au* (so spelled in German *haus*, *laut*, etc.). The other English diphthongs are the vowel of *try*, *buy*, *ride*, composed of *a* + *i*, equivalent therefore to *ai*, and the diphthong *o* + *i*, that is *oi*, as exemplified in *boil*, *boy*, *coin*. It should be noted that simple vowels are sometimes written with two letters, as, for example, the

simple vowel in *great*, *pair*, *lead*, *pay*, *tho(ugh)*, and many others; and, on the other hand, that diphthongs are often written with one letter, as in *ride*, *try*, etc. One should observe always, therefore, the sound and not the spelling in determining whether a vowel is a diphthong or not.

7. **Alphabet and Sounds.** The symbols or letters of which our alphabet is composed are, it is obvious, quite conventional and arbitrary. There is no inherent reason why the symbol T, with its variant forms t and 𝔗, or the symbol D, with its other forms d and 𝔇, should stand each for its own sound. So far as the appropriateness of the symbols to the sounds goes, they might be interchanged without loss. Originally alphabetic symbols may have had some peculiar appropriateness to the sounds which they represented, either as a sort of "visible speech," indicating the position of the vocal organs by the shape of the symbol, or as "picture writing," like the hieroglyphics of the Egyptians, indicating objects which bore definite relations to the various sounds. The English alphabet, however, has long since passed out of any such stage of development, and is now a set of intrinsically meaningless symbols to which specific values are arbitrarily attached.

It is also obvious that the number of sounds used in speaking the English language is greater than the number of symbols available for representing sounds. A conservative estimate would make the number of clearly distinguishable different English sounds about forty; the number of symbols in the alphabet is twenty-six. The language, therefore, has not at its command a sufficient number of characters to represent all its sounds,

and is driven consequently to use the same symbol for different sounds, as, for example, the vowel *a* in the words *hat*, *hate*, *path*, *bare*, *ball*, *about*. The conventional symbols of the alphabet, it is thus seen, may vary as to their significance within certain pretty wide limits.

If we turn now to the sounds of the language themselves, we shall find them in many ways very imperfectly and inconsistently represented. Thus we may have a simple sound represented by two symbols, as the vowel *ea* of *seat*, or the consonant *th* of *thing*. Or the same sound may be represented by several different symbols or groups of symbols, as, for example, the sound of *s* (*c*) in *race* and *erase*; or of *k* in *call*, *king*, *quell*, *shock*, *box*; or the vowel sound which appears in the words *late*, *pay*, *great*, *fail*, *veil*, *they*, *fête*. Or the same group of letters may represent such various values as *ough* in *bough*, *through*, *thought*, *cough*, *hiccough*, *enough*. Letters are frequently used, also, without any value, the so-called silent letters, like the *e* of *bare*, the *c* of *scissors*, the *k* of *knife*, the *s* of *island*, *aisle*, the *w* of *write*, the *g* of *foreign*, *sovereign*.

If these facts are held in mind, we shall be understood when we say that English is not a phonetic language. It is of course true that our alphabet does represent for us the sounds of the language; but it represents these sounds in an imperfect and inconsistent way. A perfectly phonetic language would be one in which every sound had its appropriate symbol, and no symbol more than its single value. Needless to say, neither the English language nor any other language ever in practical use has been thus perfectly phonetic. Languages vary in the degree of consistency and completeness with

which they endeavor to represent their sounds, and the earlier periods of English were much more sensitive in this respect than modern English is. Of the modern European languages, Italian is the most phonetic, French and German coming between English and Italian at the two extremes. But even Italian is not completely phonetic, and all we can say of the existing languages is that one is more phonetic than another. For the practical uses to which language is usually put, the carrying of a complete and exact system of sound representation would be an unnecessary burden. It is not important that every minute difference of sound should have its own particular symbol, since the language would be made no more intelligible thereby. Practical utility, however, demands that a language be phonetic to a certain degree, and without question it is a grave defect in the English language that the gap between its written and printed symbols, that is its spelling, and the actual sounds of the words of the language, is so great. Indeed the values of the letters of our ordinary alphabet are so various and uncertain, that it becomes necessary to settle beforehand upon some scheme of sound representation before it is possible to discuss matters which have to do with sound changes, pronunciation, and spelling.[1]

8. **A Phonetic Alphabet.** The purposes for which a phonetic alphabet may be devised are various. The

[1] English has an adverb *too*, a preposition *to*, and a numeral *two*. What shall we say in writing, that there are three *too's*, or three *to's*, or three *two's*, in English? In fact there is of course only one of each. The idea we want to express is that there is a single *phonetic* word-form which has three *logical* values; but to express this unequivocally, we need to be able to express the phonetic form of the words merely as sound, not as one word or the other.

scientific student of phonetics may elaborate some scheme whereby the minutest shades of difference in the quality and stress of sounds shall be indicated; such a system would be almost phonographic in its exactness. Or the "phonetic reformer" may invent a "practical" alphabet which he would have take the place of our present alphabet in daily printing and writing. The ideal of the scientific student is beyond our present purpose; and the vain hope of the phonetic reformer we may set aside as belonging to the group of those visionary projects, the realization of which is neither possible nor desirable. But the modest needs of the every-day student of language demand also some system of phonetic representation, one that is simple and intelligible, and at the same time capable of recording the essential characteristics of English sounds. It will be understood that the alphabet which is here presented is for this purpose; it is intended merely as an aid in the discussion of pronunciation, of spelling, and of sounds in general.[1] The alphabet makes use, so far as possible, of the ordinary letters of our English alphabet. Long vowels are indicated by the circumflex (ˆ). No sound has more than one symbol, and no symbol has more than one value. The number of sounds, and consequently the number of symbols, is forty-five, eighteen being simple vowels, four being diphthongs, and twenty-three being consonant sounds. Arranged in alphabetic order, they are as follows:

[1] The alphabet is a slightly modified form of that recommended in the *Report of a Joint Committee representing the American Philological Association, and the Modern Language Association of America, on the Subject of a Phonetic English Alphabet.* New York, 1904.

Letter.	Key-words.
â	(a)rt, p(a)rt, h(ea)rt, f(a)ther, c(a)lm.
a	(a)rtistic, h(o)t, r(o)ck, n(o)t.
ǣ	b(a)re, h(ei)r, st(ai)r.
æ	h(a)t, m(a)tter, h(a)s.
ɑ̂	(a)sk, p(a)th.
b	(b)e.
d	(d)o.
ê	m(a)te, th(ey), s(ay).
e	m(e)t.[1]
f	(f)ee.
g	(g)o.
ŋ	si(ng).
h	(h)e.
ɪ	mar(i)ne, s(ee).
i	t(i)n.
j (=dʒ)	(j)aw.
ȼ (=tʃ)	(ch)ew.
k	(k)in.
l	(l)et.
m	(m)et.
n	(n)et.
ô	f(a)ll.
ɵ	(au)tumnal.
ô	n(o)te.
o	d(o)nation.
p	(p)it.
r	(r)at.
s	(s)et.
ʃ	(sh)ip.
t	(t)en.

1 For practical purposes it has not been deemed necessary to make here the distinction between close and open *e*, noted above. The same applies to *i* and *o*.

Letter.	Key-words.
þ	(th)in.
ȝ	(th)at.
û	m(oo)d.
u	p(u)sh.
ʊ	h(u)t.
ə	(a)bout.
v	(v)at.
w	(w)in.
y	(y)es.
z	(z)est.
ʒ	a(z)ure, plea(s)ure, lei(s)ure.
ai	r(i)de, s(i)gh, (ey)e, b(uy).
au	h(ou)se.
ɵi	b(oi)l.
iu	t(u)be.

The use of most of these symbols is self-explanatory, over half being exactly as one would most readily infer from their use in the Modern English alphabet. Of the others, however, a few words of explanation are needed. In the first place, it should be noted that the symbols â, ê, î, ô, û have what is known as their continental values, that is, the values which they have in all the European languages except English, and which in the earlier periods of English they had also in that language. The vowel â has, therefore, the value of the vowel in *father*, ê that of the vowel of *fate*, î that of the second vowel of *machine*, ô that of *note*, and û that of *food*. The five different sounds with which the alphabet opens seem a bit confusing at first. But æ, as in *at*, is our familiar sound, found in numberless words like *cat*, *fat*, *that*, *immaculate*, *infatuate*, etc. The long value of this sound appears in words like *air*, *there*, *lair*, *pare*,

pear, etc. The value of â is the broad sound which appears in *father*, *palm*, *calm*, *retard*, and a is its corresponding short sound. The vowel intended by the symbol å is a transition vowel between â in *father* and æ̂ in *bare*. It is pronounced by many Americans in words like *path*, *bath*, *grass*, *master*, *France*, *glance*, *raft*, *laugh*, *calf*, that is, in words in which the vowel comes before a voiceless continuant, *f*, *s*, *th*, or a nasal followed by a voiceless continuant. In some communities, however, the vowel in these words is pronounced flat, like æ̂, and in others it is pronounced very broad, like â (see § 11 for a further discussion of this sound).

The symbol ŋ represents a nasalized *g*, as in *sing*, *thing*. It is a simple sound, altho it is written, in our conventional spelling, with the two letters *ng;* if these two letters were actually pronounced, however, we should have a word of the phonetic form *sin-gə*, *thin-gə*. In a word like *finger*, which is pronounced *fing-ger*, not *fin-ger*, we have a nasalized *g* (that is, ŋ) followed by the regular *g*. The different sounds here described should be practiced until the distinctions are perfectly clear.

The symbol ȼ is invented to express the continuant consonant usually represented by *ch* in the regular alphabet. A phonetic alphabet should have its symbols consist of but single letters, and it was necessary therefore to invent one for the purpose of representing this sound. The four sounds of *o* are easily distinguishable. Other examples of ô are *awe*, *awful*, *aught*, *ought all*, *lord*, *form*, *storm*, *dog*, *cloth*. The corresponding short sound ɵ does not occur frequently; examples are the first syllable of *audacious*, *autocratic*, *auditor*. The ô

of *note*, *boat*, *vote*, *loan*, *snow*, *hoe*, *tho(ugh)*, *toll*, etc., is a very common sound; the corresponding short sound, o, is usually found in dissyllables or polysyllables; examples are the first syllable of *poetic*, *bohemian*, *rotation*, *co-operate*, also the second syllable of *window*, *furlough*, *borrow*. The continuant usually represented by *sh* in the regular alphabet has again to have a new symbol, ʃ. The symbols þ and ð, borrowed from the Old English alphabet, represent respectively the voiceless dental continuant, as in *thin*, *thick*, *thing*, *thought*, etc., and the voiced dental continuant, as in *thee*, *those*, *their*, etc. The two sounds represented by ʊ and ə are similar, but should be distinguished. The sound ʊ occurs only in stressed syllables, as in *up*, *but*, *puff*, *love*, *above*, *dull*, *courage*. The sound ə, known as "weak *e*," is an interesting sound of wide occurrence. It is what might be called the indifferent or obscure vowel, and is the sound which all other vowels tend to become when they are not pronounced clearly and distinctly. Vowels are especially liable to become ə when they are not supported by the stress. Thus the article *the* is rarely pronounced fully, as ðî, unless for some special reason it is strongly stressed; usually it is pronounced ðə, as in the sentence *I saw the president yesterday*. But other words in this sentence are likewise slightly stressed, and when the sentence is somewhat rapidly spoken, the vowel *I*, the second and third vowel of *president*, and the second vowel of *yesterday*, all tend to become this obscure vowel. The phonetic transcription of this sentence, therefore, as it would be spoken in ordinary colloquial English, is as follows: ə sê ðə Prezədənt yestərdê.

For the purpose of further study of the alphabet and

practice in using it, a part of Lincoln's Gettysburg Address is here given with its phonetic transcription:[1]

"Four score and seven years ago our fathers brought forth on this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation, so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. We are met on a great battle-field of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting-place for those who gave their lives that that nation might live. It is altogether fitting and proper that we should do this."

fər skôr ənd sevən yîrz əgô aur fâðərz brêt fərþ ən ðis kəntinent ə niû nêʃən, kənsîvd in libərti ənd dedikêtid tu ðə prəpəziʃən ðət əl men ar kriêtid îkwəl. nau wî ar ingêjd in ə grêt sivil wêr, testiŋ hweðər ðæt nêʃən, sô kənsîvd ænd sô dedikêtid, kæn lêŋ endiûr. wî ar met ən ə grêt bætəl-fîld əv ðæt wêr. wî hæv kum tu dedikêt ə pərʃən əv ðæt fîld æz ə fainəl restiŋ-plês fər ðôz hu hîr gêv ðær laivz ðət ðæt nêʃən mait liv. it iz əltugeðər fitiŋ ənd prəpər ðət wî ʃud dû ðis.

To one unfamiliar with it, a phonetic transcription such as the above seems funny at first, and of course a good deal of the humor of dialect stories and poems consists in an attempted phonetic, or partially phonetic, transcription of actual speech. This humorous effect is due largely to the novelty of the new forms, which intrinsically are obviously no more humorous than the symbols of the regular alphabet. That which is novel seems funny, especially when we already have a habit of mind established by a different custom. Thus a style

[1] *Report of a Joint Committee*, p. 39.

of hat two or three years old would excite laughter, altho it may differ comparatively little from the contemporary style, in its own time may have been the height of the fashion, and in another year or two may again become the correct or conventional style. Compare also the common inclination of the uneducated and untraveled to regard all customs and habits which differ from their own as ridiculous.

9. **Sound Changes.** Sounds are the least stable element in language. The words themselves, the order of the words, the written or printed forms, all these, tho they are subject to constant change, are relatively fixed and permanent as compared with sounds. The most sensitive part of language, sounds respond delicately to the slightest and most evanescent influences. It is probable that if complete phonographic records could be taken of the speech of an individual, it would be found that no phrase or sentence phonetically ever exactly repeated itself. We may compare the sound-material of the language to a restless, ever-fluctuating ocean, always in its essentials the same, but never two moments the same in the forms assumed by the elements of which it is composed. It is of the nature of sound, which is the mere passing breath of a moment, that it should be difficult to hold or fix sharply in the memory; and it is only by constant practice and use that we are able to keep the sounds of our language even approximately the same. For, with all our effort, we do not succeed in preventing many changes. Day by day, minute by minute, shiftings of our sounds are taking place, and tho most of these are too minute to attract attention at the time, in the course of years, of a generation or two,

they result in the substitution of altogether new sounds for the old ones. Just as the light of day at two successive moments appears to be the same, but is not, since it is by the accumulation of momentary changes that the great result of day and night is obtained, so our speech, which at a given moment we think we hold firmly in our grasp, is constantly slipping away and assuming new forms.

So far as human observation goes, it is difficult to see that anything is gained by the constant series of changes which are affecting the phonetic side of language. No process of beneficent evolution, or the contrary, has been at work in the vast majority of the changes in English sound, no principles of development reveal themselves. In this respect language differs from its history on the side of its inflections and vocabulary. The changes in the English inflectional system have resulted in a greater simplicity and efficiency in the structure of the English language; and the development of the vocabulary has made the language richer and more variously expressive. But sound changes appear to have taken place largely without any end in view, merely because it is the nature of sound to be impermanent and variable.

Many of the changes which take place in language sounds are so slight and of such momentary importance that they never demand consideration. It is not essential to intelligibility that the sounds of language should always conform to what we may regard as the perfect types of the sounds. We allow a considerable latitude in the speech of individuals, for we understand when words are only approximately correctly pronounced. There is,

therefore, a large area of negligible variation in the sounds of speech. When a sound change, however, is persistent, so that it affects the language in general, or the particular language of a community, it then becomes matter worthy of observation, and, so far as is possible, of scientific generalization. Generalization of this sort, based on the observation of sound changes which have proceeded in a regular fashion, are known as phonetic laws. It should be clearly understood, however, that phonetic laws are laws only in the sense that they state what takes place, not that they imply a lawgiver who makes a law which they must follow. Like the laws of physics, the law that night succeeds day, or that water when frozen expands, the laws of sounds are based entirely upon experiment and observation.

Sound laws are therefore general habits or customs, and a discussion of why sound laws should arise would be a discussion of why and how general habits and customs are formed. Imitation is undoubtedly the most powerful single factor in bringing about uniformity in the use of language, therefore the most powerful single factor in the formation of linguistic laws. This applies not only to sounds but to all other aspects of language. This imitation may be conscious or unconscious, tho it is usually the latter. Children, for example, imitate the sounds and the words which they habitually hear, without giving any thought to the matter. They accept blindly the authority of their elders, and it is only adult people, who have learned to observe their speech and to reason about it, who become aware of the changes that are taking place. But even among adults the conscious

attitude of mind towards language is relatively rare. They also usually form their habits in language by an unconscious adaptation to the familiar use about them. It is obvious that no discredit attaches to imitation of the kind we are describing. Every one must be imitative to a very large extent in his use of speech, because speech is a common social possession and not the right of any one individual. There could be no worse kind of speech than one which was altogether original, altogether different from the speech of others, because such speech would be unintelligible.

Many sound changes are due in their origins to organic causes, such as the modification of the physical organs of sound-production. Thus it is a general and obvious principle that a syllable which bears a heavy stress is likely to be pronounced more sharply and distinctly than it would be if it bore only a light stress. Or the rapidity with which one speaks will usually be observed to affect very markedly the clearness and distinctness of the sounds. Changes which are due to such natural tendencies as these affect the people altogether; they tend to become general, therefore, without imitation, because the same natural law operates upon all equally. It will be necessary now to examine the changes in sounds more fully from these two points of view, the imitative and the organic tendencies towards change in the sounds of speech.

10. **Imitative Sound Changes.** It is only when we look back over the history of English sounds and observe them in a long perspective that we can see the results of imitative sound laws on a large scale. When we compare the system of sounds used in Old English, however,

with that used in Modern English, we see that there has been an almost complete displacement. This is especially true of the vowels, which are always much less stable than the consonants, our Modern English consonants differing on the whole but little from their use fifteen hundred years ago. The vowels, however, have undergone great changes. Words which in Old English, for example, had the vowel â, by the Middle English period had changed this vowel to ê, and Modern English has gone a step further and changed the Middle English ê into ô. Thus Old English *stan* (stân), became Middle English *ston* (stên), and Modern English *stone* (stôn). Following the same phonetic law, Old English *ban* (bân) became Middle English *bon* (bên), Modern English *bone* (bôn); Old English *bat* (bât) became Middle English *bot* (bêt), Modern English *boat* (bôt). Other instances of the operation of the same rule, or law, are the following:

Old English.		Middle English.		Modern English.	
gan	(gân)	*gon*	(gên)	*go*	(gô)
wrat	(wrât)[1]	*wrot*	(wrêt)	*wrote*	(rôt)
fam	(fâm)	*fom*	(fêm)	*foam*	(fôm)
blawan	(blâwan)	*blowen*	(blêwən)	*blow*	(blô)
papa	(pâpa)	*pope*	(pêpə)	*pope*	(pôp)
wa	(wâ)	*wo*	(wê)	*woe*	(wô)

Other vowels have changed just as completely. Thus Old English ô, omitting the transition stages, has become regularly û in Modern English, as illustrated by the following examples:

[1] The *w* in *wr*, as well as the *h* in *hl*, *hr*, were all pronounced in the Old English period.

Old English.		Modern English.	
mod	(môd)	*mood*	(mûd)
bloma	(blôma)	*bloom*	(blûm)
col	(kôl)	*cool*	(kûl)
don	(dôn)	*do*	(dû)
hrof	(hrôf)	*roof*	(rûf)
scoh	(skôh)	*shoe*	(ʃû)

To complete the list of the long vowels, Old English ê has become the Modern English î; Old English î has become the Modern English diphthong ai; and Old English û has become the Modern English diphthong au. These three groups of changes are illustrated by the following words:

Old English.		Modern English.	
cen	(kên)	*keen*	(kîn)
seon	(sêon)	*see*	(sî)
med	(mêd)	*meed*	(mîd)
slepan	(slêpan)	*sleep*	(slîp)
pipe	(pîpe)	*pipe*	(paip)
hwit	(hwît)	*white*	(hwait)
wid	(wîd)	*wide*	(waid)
is	(îs)	*ice*	(ais)
hus	(hûs)	*house*	(haus)
muþ	(mûþ)	*mouth*	(mauþ)
hlud	(hlûd)	*loud*	(laud)
bru	(brû)	*brow*	(brau)

If we should continue our examination of the other vowels and diphthongs, short and long, of the Old English period, we should find that nearly every one of them had shifted greatly from its original form, that the original form had become lost, and that through imitation a

new form had become general and regular. Just who it was who started each specific change, and for what reason, it is impossible to say. It is not probable that at any period one could put his hand on a definite individual, or group of individuals, and say that this person or that was responsible for a specific change. The changes advanced undoubtedly by minute degrees, and the man of the Old English or the Middle English period was at no time conscious that his speech was changing to such an extent that a few hundred years later it would seem to his descendants almost entirely a different language from their own. There is no reason to believe that our own speech to-day is much more stable than was that of the Old English period. Unconsciously to ourselves we are being drifted here and there on those currents of speech-sounds which our descendants two or three hundred years hence will be able to trace through their curves and meanderings, and thus to formulate and generalize into phonetic laws, as now we formulate the changes in the speech of our Old English ancestors. In some few instances, however, we can trace changes and tendencies in our contemporary speech, and these deserve a few words of special consideration. Before passing on to the consideration of contemporary imitative sound changes, it may be interesting to examine a passage of Old English and the same passage in Middle English in their respective phonetic forms, and to compare these earlier sounds of the language with those of Modern English. For this purpose we may choose a passage from the New Testament, giving it first in an Old English version, made before the year 1000, accompanied by a literal translation and a phonetic transcription, and

then the same passage in Wycliffe's version, made in the last quarter of the fourteenth century. The Old English version is as follows:

Đā hī æt hām wǣron, hē āhsode hī: "Hwæt smēade gē be wege?"

Ond hī suwodon. Witodlīce hī on wege smēadon hwylc hyra yldost wǣre.

Þā hē sæt, hē clypode hī twelfe ond sǣde him: "Gif ēower hwylc wyle bēon fyrmest, bēo sē ēaðmōdust ond ēower ealra þēn."

Þā nām hē ānne cnapan ond gesette on hyra middele. Þā hē hine beclypte, hē sǣde him:

"Swā hwylc swā ānne of þus gerādum cnapum on mīnum naman onfēhð, sē onfēhð mē. And sē þe mē onfēhð, hē ne onfēhð mē, ac þone þe mē sende."[1]—Mark ix, 33–37.

Þâ hî æt hâm wæron, hê âksode hî: "hwæt smæade yê be weye?"

Ond hî suwodon. Witodlîke hî on weye smæadon hwilk hira ildost wære.

Þâ hê sæt, hê klipode hî twelve ond sæde him: "Yif êower hwilk wile bêon firmest, bêo sê æaðmôdust ond eôwer ealra þên."

Þâ nâm hê ânne knapan ond yesétte on hira middele. Þâ hê hine bekli'pte, hê sæde him:

"Swâ hwilk swâ ânne of þus yerâ'dum knapum on mînum naman onfê'hþ, sê onfê'hþ mê. Ond sê ðe mê onfê'hþ, hê ne onfê'hþ mê, ak þone ðe mê sende."[2]

[1] From Skeat, *The Holy Gospels in Anglo-Saxon, Northumbrian and Old Mercian Versions*, Cambridge, 1871–1887. Literally translated this goes as follows: "When they at home were, he asked them: 'What considered ye by the way?' And they were silent (suwodon). Verily they on the way considered which of them eldest (i. e., most honorable) was. When he sat, he called them twelve and said to them: 'If of you any will be foremost, be he humblest and of you all servant.' Then he took a boy and set him (the pronoun is not expressed) in their midst. When he embraced him, he said to them: 'Whosoever one of such boys (of þus gerādum cnapum) in my name receives, he receives me. And he who receives me, he receives not me, but him who sent me.'"

[2] The stress is always on the first syllable of dissyllabic and polysyllabic words, unless otherwise indicated.

The same passage from the Wycliffe Bible is as follows:

And whanne thei weren in the hous, he axide hem: "What tretiden ye in the weie?"	and hwanə ðê wêrən in ðə hûs, hê aksidə hem: "hwat trêtidən yê in ðə wêyə?"
And thei weren stille. For thei disputiden among hem in the weie, who of hem schulde be grettest.	and ðê wêrən stilə. For ðê disputidən əməŋ hem in ðə wêyə, hwə əf hem ʃuldə bê grêtəst.
And he sat, and clepide the twelue, and seide to hem: "If ony man wole be the firste among you, he schal be the laste of alle, and the mynyster of alle.	and hê sat, and klêpidə ðə twelvə, and sêdə tô hem: if əni man wələ bê ðə firstə əməŋ iû, hê ʃal bê ðə lastə əf allə, and ðə ministər əf allə.
And he took a child, and sette hym in the myddil of hem. And whanne he hadde biclippid hym, he seide to hem,	and hê tôk a ȼîld, and setə him in ðə midil əf hem. and hwanə hê hadə biklipid him, hê sêdə tô hem,
Who euer resseyueth oon of such children in my name, he resseyueth me. And who euer resseyueth me, he resseyueth not me aloone, but hym that sente me.[1]	hwô evər resêvəþ ôn əf suȼ ȼîldrən in mî nâmə, hê resêvəþ mê. and hwô evər resêveþ mê, hê resêvəþ nət mê alône, but him ðat sentə mê.

It may be of interest to add the same passage in the King James version:

33 And being in the houſe, he aſked them, What was it that yee diſputed among your selues by the way.

[1] From *The New Testament in English according to the Version by John Wycliffe about A. D.* 1380 *and revised by John Purvey* about A. D. 1388. Ed. Forshall and Madden, Oxford, 1879.

34 But they held their peace, For by the way they had diſputed among themselues who should be the greateſt.

35 And he ſate downe, and called the twelue and ſaith unto them, If any man deſire to be firſt, the ſame ſhall be laſt of all, and ſeruant of all.

36 And he tooke a child, and ſet him in the midſt of them; & when he had taken him in his arms, he ſaid unto them,

37 Whoſoeuer ſhall receiue one of ſuch children in my Name, receiueth me; and whoſoeuer ſhall receiue me, receiueth not me, but him that ſent me.[1]

11. **Contemporary Imitative Sound Changes.** One of the most frequently discussed instances of contemporary sound change is that which centers about the pronunciation of certain words containing the vowel æ or â. Without attempting to follow the history of these sounds through the whole course of their development, we shall merely point out the fact that they have been constantly changing, that the word *path* was pronounced pæþ by one generation, pâþ by another, and pâþ by still another. Generally, the feeling which determined the use of one sound or the other seems to have been that the particular sound chosen was more "refined" than the others; and it is a curious fact that each of the three sounds has at different times been elevated to this position of eminence. Thus in the first quarter of the nineteenth century, in London the pronunciation of the vowel of words like *path*, *past*, *ask*, *glass*, *bath*, *dance*, etc., as æ, like the vowel of *hat*, *cat*, etc., lengthened,

[1] *The Holy Bible*, London, 1611. 1st ed. of the King James Version. The pronunciation is approximately the same as that of Modern English. Notice the large number of silent letters as compared with the Middle English and the Old English pronunciation.

was regarded as elegant, and, of course, by those to whom it was strange, as affected. This is well illustrated by Leigh Hunt's description of a night watchman, who was affecting the speech of his betters. "Of varieties among watchmen," says Hunt,[1] "we remember several. One was a dandy watchman who used to ply at the top of Oxford Street, next the park. He had a mincing way with it, pronouncing the *a* in the word *past* as it is in *hat*, making a little preparatory hem before he spoke, and then bringing out his '*past ten*' in a style of genteel indifference."

A few years later, the elegant pronunciation of this sound in this country became established as â, that is, the broad sound of *a* in *father*. This was undoubtedly due, in the main, to the influence of the speech of New England, particularly Boston, which, owing to its literary position during the lifetime of Longfellow, Emerson, Hawthorne, Lowell, and the other great figures of the first flowering period of American literature, was often regarded as the seat of culture in America. From Boston, where it was a normal and usual pronunciation, the broad sound â passed over by imitation to the speech of other communities. Thus Richard Grant White,[2] a native of New York and the arbiter of taste in his day, goes so far as to say that "The full, free, unconscious utterance of the broad *ah* sound of *a* is the surest indication, in speech, of social culture which began at the cradle." To a certain extent the educated American public seemed to agree with this astonishing dictum; conscientious speakers, if they did not have it naturally,

[1] *Walks Home by Night.* The Companion, Feb. 6, 1828.

[2] *Words and Their Uses,* Chapter III, p. 50 (New York, 1899).

tried to cultivate this broad *ah* sound which was to be the test of social culture, and it was, and still is, to some extent, taught in schools as the only correct and elegant pronunciation. But the public was not prepared to go the whole way, and instead of the full, broad â as in *father*, it has now shown a tendency to compromise on a vowel between æ̂ of *hat* lengthened, and â of *father*, a vowel for which we use the symbol ɑ̂. This vowel, which has been well described as a "refined transition" between â and æ̂, is the one which is now, or is tending to become, the natural and normal use of certain communities in America, chiefly in the East, in words like *path*, *past*, *glass*, *master*, *dance*, *glance*, *plant*, *answer*, etc., and which is largely imitated by speakers in communities in which the natural and native pronunciation of the vowel in these words is æ̂. Whether the vowel ɑ̂ will ever become natural and general all over the country, or whether the pendulum will swing back and æ̂ or â become the refined and imitated pronunciations again, only he can foretell who knows how to predict the whims and vagaries of fashion.

The question is often asked, Which of these three pronunciations is the "correct" one, pæ̂þ, or pâþ, or pɑ̂þ? Since the very broad pronunciation of â is rarely heard now or advocated, in any community, we may eliminate it and reduce the choice to one between pæ̂þ and pɑ̂þ. If the preceding discussion has been followed and understood, it will be apparent that it is not necessary to choose between the two pronunciations, that one is not correct to the exclusion of the other, but that both may be equally correct. A phonetic rule or law, it will be remembered, was defined as a generalization based on

observation of the actual use of the language, apart from any notion of a lawgiver who establishes this or that as the law of language. Now if we observe the actual use or custom of the language, we shall see that some people or some communities say pæþ and others say pûþ, and further that the question of good English or bad English, that is, of correctness, does not enter here, unless we assume arbitrarily that one must be right and the other must be wrong. The question, however, is not one of right and wrong, but merely of two differing customs. In cases of this sort one's own individual preference and taste must decide. If some speakers prefer pæþ and others pûþ, the question of the one side giving up in favor of the other must depend entirely on the weight of authority which the one is willing to grant to the other. Each must decide for himself which law or custom he wishes to follow.

Another vowel sound as to which the question of imitation, that is, of choice between differing customary sounds, arises, is the sound of short open *o* in words like *log*, *dog*, *fog*, *stalk*, *bog*. The usual tendency in America is to pronounce the vowel of these words as ɵ, i. e., dɵg, fɵg, stɵk, bɵg. In some communities, however, and by some speakers, the words are pronounced with a sound exactly equivalent to a, as in *what*, *watch*, *quality*, following thus the pronunciation of words like *not* (nat), *rock* (rak), *hot* (hat), *cob* (kab), *stop* (stap). Their phonetic form according to this pronunciation would therefore be dag, fag, stak, bag. On the other hand, by imitation of the pronunciation dɵg, fɵg, etc., this quality of the sound passes over into words like *not*, *hot*, *rock*, *stop*, which are then pronounced nɵt, hɵt, rɵk, stɵp.

Still another group of words may be cited in illustration, words like *roof*, *root*, *soot*, *hoof*, *hoop*, and others. By some, perhaps most, speakers these words are pronounced with the vowel û, as in *mood*, *tool*, *moon*, *goose*, etc., their phonetic form then being rûf, rût, sût, hûf, hûp, etc. Other speakers pronounce these words with an open short u-sound, u, the sound of the vowel in *put*, *foot*, *good*, *hood*, *stood*, and many other words. According to this pronunciation, their phonetic form would be ruf, rut, sut, huf, hup, etc. What the final outcome will be in the case of these three pairs of sounds, æ̂ and â, ɵ and a, û and u, depends entirely upon the extent to which imitation takes place. Perhaps in time all words containing the a-vowel before a continuant consonant may come to be pronounced alike, either as æ̂ or â; likewise, all words containing the o-vowel may come to be pronounced as ɵ, *not*, *hot*, *got*, *rock*, thus becoming nɵt, hɵt, gɵt, rɵk, or as a, *dog*, *fog*, *log*, thus becoming dag, fag, lag; and all words containing the oo-vowel may settle in the pronunciation û, *put*, *foot*, *good*, *stood*, becoming general as pût, fût, gûd, stûd (a pronunciation which is now a common one in Scotland), or on the pronunciation u, *soot*, *hoof*, *root*, *mood*, *goose*, thus becoming sut, huf, rut, mud, gus. Or the law of imitation may not be strong enough to bring about uniformity of usage in any of the three instances, in which case we shall continue as we are at present, some speakers using one sound and some speakers the other. This will be the most likely state of affairs so long as the different sounds are felt to be equally correct, that is, so long as they are all used by speakers who must be grouped with the class of the educated and refined. If, however, for

some reason or other, the pronunciation dag, or the pronunciation ruf, should come to be regarded as less elegant than deg and rûf, just as at present there is a strong tendency to regard the pronunciation pâþ as more elegant than the pronunciation pæþ, the likelihood is that dag and ruf would be given up entirely in favor of deg and rûf. Of the three groups of words, the one consequently concerning which it is safest to prophesy is the *path-glass-ask-dance*-group, because the law of imitation here is given a special direction by reason of the somewhat special favor in which the one sound is held.

A group of words which at present show a tendency towards sound change, but in which the law of imitation meets with some restraining opposition, is that consisting of words like *tube*, *duke*, *due*, *Tuesday*, *new*, and others. Many speakers pronounce these words with the sound of û, giving thus tûb, dûk, dû, tûsde, nû, like *true*, *fruit*, *dew*, *rule*, *rude* (after l and r the sound is always u, not iu), that is trû, frût, dû, rûl, rûd. This pronunciation is more generally heard in words of more than one syllable, as *induce*, *produce*, *duty*, etc., than it is in monosyllables. Yet both in monosyllables and in polysyllables it may be frequently observed, even, it may be pointed out, in the speech of persons who think they always pronounce the iû sound, as tiûb, diûk, diû, tiûsde, niû, prodiûs, etc. There is, among people who attach much importance to traditional and dogmatic rules, a strong feeling that the u pronunciation in tûb, dûk, etc., is wrong, or even vulgar. The only right pronunciation, they say, is tiûb, diûk, etc. But is tûb "incorrect"? If it is a widely occurring pronunciation, as our observation attests, then it must be one of the laws or customs of the

language. But if it is a custom of the language, it has the same kind of authority as tiûb, which itself becomes "correct" only by being a law or custom of speech. Neither has any other authority than that which it acquires through the habits or customs of those who speak the language. The question of choice is again the question of which group of speakers, that is, which habit or custom, one wishes to follow. If one observes that the pronunciation tûb is the habitual, customary, and unaffected speech of his linguistic community, one need have no hesitation in following it. If, on the other hand, according to his observation, tûb is a pronunciation which is characteristic of the uneducated speaker and is heard only from such speakers, his choice is equally easy to make. The difficulty and the duty, in both instances, is to make sure that the observations upon which one's judgments are based are real and not prejudiced, and are sufficiently extensive to justify a generalization. Above all they should be derived not from the traditional statements of books, but from direct observation of actual practice.

A few further stray instances of contemporary sound changes may be cited as illustrative of the kind of questions which continually arise for decision. Among old-fashioned people one often hears the pronunciation of the word *deaf* as dîf, the usual conventional pronunciation now being def. The pronunciation dîf, however, is historically justifiable, the vowel having the same origin as the vowel in *sheaf* (ʃîf), *deep* (dîp), and *believe* (bilîv), and formerly it was in good current use among educated as well as uneducated speakers. Through some whim or fashion of the moment, which now has

been forgotten, the pronunciation def managed to creep in, was generally imitated, and thus has now become the general, and in that sense the correct, pronunciation. The pronunciation dîf, however, still persists as a survival in the speech of old-fashioned people, and, since they are always slower in arriving at imitative innovations than the educated, it persists also in the speech of the "ignorant" and "uneducated."

There is at present some tendency to discriminate between the use of *rise* as a verb and as a noun; in the former case the word is pronounced raiz, in the latter, rais, following the analogy of words like *use* as noun (iûs) and as verb (iûz); *device* (divais), *devize* (divaiz). This change, however, is not at all general, and is chiefly in the hands of more or less conscious and affected users of the language. The same is true of the two pronunciations of *either* and *neither* as îðər, nîðər, and aiðər, naiðər. In all communities in America the pronunciation, îðər, nîðər, is by far the more general and usual, the second pronunciation being but rarely natural. The question of correctness and choice between the two is again to be decided entirely by one's preference. One who wishes his customs of speech to be normal and inconspicuous will generally choose to say îðər, nîðər; one who prefers a slight mannerism of speech, who affects differences of speech that will distinguish him from others, is at liberty to choose aiðər, naiðər. The situation is somewhat similar in the instance of the two pronunciations of *tomato* as tomêto and tomâto. Both pronunciations are in good natural use in different sections of the country, tho the pronunciation tomêto is by far the more common. The second pronunciation,

tomâto, becomes an affectation only when it is assumed by persons whose normal pronunciation is tomêto for the sake of distinguishing their speech from that of their environment. It is clear that it would be a much more reasonable and admirable endeavor for a speaker to strive to adapt his speech always to the use of his environment than to search out usages in speech that will set him off and distinguish him as different from his environment.

12. **Dialect.** When, through the process of imitation, the speech of a certain community acquires characteristics peculiar to that community, which thus distinguish the speech of the community from that of the country at large, or from other sections of the country, we have a dialect. Dialect characteristics may affect both the popular and the cultivated speech, altho they are almost always much more strongly marked in the speech of the common daily intercourse of the people than they are in the speech of more careful and conscious speakers. Almost every community has its local popular dialect, as, for example, the Hoosier dialect of Indiana, so skillfully used by James Whitcomb Riley in his poems; the New England dialect, used by Lowell in the *Biglow Papers;* the Virginia dialect, made familiar to all of recent years through many a story of Southern life. We may speak also of dialect not from a geographical point of view, but from a racial and linguistic point of view. When persons whose native tongue is different from English settle in an English community, they are likely to develop a peculiar kind of English, which consists of a mixture of their own native tongue with English, resulting in

a speech which is neither standard English nor a foreign language, but a sort of mixed popular dialect of English. Thus we have the negro dialect in this country, the Pennsylvania German dialect, which, however, contains such a large proportion of German words and is pronounced so much in the German fashion that it might better be called a dialect of German than of English; in certain regions which have been largely settled by Scandinavians, in Minnesota, Iowa, and other places, there has also grown up a mixed popular Scandinavian and English dialect. The Irish brogue, or dialect, is familiar to all; and in cities in which there is a large Hebrew element, a Hebrew dialect with marked individual characteristics has grown up. None of these dialects, however, either of the local or mixed kind, tend to spread beyond their own respective communities. When they are used in literature, it is for the purpose of giving local color to a situation, or, in character studies, for the purpose of making the speech of the character harmonize with his surroundings. The use of dialect for local color is found as far back as Chaucer, and is of course very common in later fiction, poetry, and comedy. The value of comic dialect characters on the stage has long been known, and they can be found as far back as Shakspere's Welshman, Scotchman, and Irishman in Henry V. The comic effect in all such instances arises from the violent contrast between what is regarded as the standard and correct speech and the speech of the dialect character, Welshman, Frenchman, village philosopher, or whoever it may be.

The line marking the separation of the popular and local dialect from the standard speech of cultivated

persons is not, however, a sharp one. The ascent from the popular to the standard speech is gradual, and since every speaker is necessarily a native of some local community, his speech, especially his daily colloquial speech, is almost sure to bear some traces of its local origin. Just to what extent one is willing to allow these native and local characteristics of speech to remain must be left to individual choice. Perhaps no well-bred speaker would be willing to have his speech present such marked local characteristics that it immediately determined him as belonging to some special class or community. Such a manner of speech might fairly be called provincial. In general, the more formal one's speech is, the less it should be marked by localisms or provincialisms. The reason for this is that in formal discourse one usually is addressing a larger audience and one made up of more diverse elements than is the case in ordinary daily conversation, and consequently economy of attention demands that we should avoid such peculiarities of speech as might offend the taste of any one present. Every educated person owes it to himself, therefore, to be able to divest his speech of its local characteristics and to speak a language which is approximately standard. What one shall regard as approximately standard must again depend, in the end, on individual observation; but on this question we shall have more to say later.

13. **Organic Sound Changes**. In the preceding paragraphs we have been speaking of certain changes in the pronunciation of English sounds which become general, or tend to become so, through the process of imitation. Besides these changes we must consider a second group

in which the changes are dependent less upon the law of imitation than upon purely natural and physical causes. These we may group under the general head of organic changes. The underlying explanation of all these changes of this second kind is to be found in the fact that our speech rests upon varying and entirely different planes of utterance. Sometimes we speak very slowly and distinctly, at others we speak rapidly and with less attention to the form of each individual word certain words or groups of words we stress, while others are spoken with a less degree of energy. In general, the principle holds that the amount of energy we put forth in the operation of the organs of speech is in inverse ratio to the obviousness of the idea to be expressed. In speaking a conventional formula, as, for example, the greeting *How do you do?* we enunciate the words very indistinctly. We do not say Hau dû iû dû? but perhaps Hau də dû? or Hau dû? or even, the dialect writers tell us, *Howdy?* It is not only in the speech of the ignorant and uneducated that such relaxed pronunciations find a place, but in the speech of everybody. Some little practice in self-observation is often required, however, before a speaker realizes the actual phonetic character of his language. We are likely to have some theoretical notion of an ideal perfect pronunciation, — the conviction perhaps that we speak as we write, — so firmly fixed in our minds that we think we say what we think we ought to say, whereas what we actually say is something quite different. The question whether or not it is right to permit ourselves to use these relaxed pronunciations we shall consider later. In the meantime we should observe that the principle has always been in operation, and

that it has deeply affected both the written and spoken form of our language. A few historical illustrations will make this point clear.

In Milton's *Paradise Lost*, in a passage in which the poet is speaking of Dagon, the fish-god, there occurs the curious-looking word *grunsel:*

> In his own temple, on the grunsel-edge,
> Where he fell flat and shamed his worshipers.[1]

The meaning of this word would be hard to guess from Milton's form. But when we know that it is simply worn down from a compound *ground* + *sill*, the analogy of *window-sill*, *door-sill* gives us a ready clue to its meaning, even tho a compound *ground-sill* is no longer in current use. Milton's *grunsel* is only one of many words with a similar history. Our formula at parting, for example, which we now spell *Good-by* or *Good-bye*, and pronounce, with the stress on the second syllable, gəd-baí, or even without any vowel in the first syllable, g'd-baí, was originally the whole phrase *God be with you.* This, however, was entirely too long for a conventional formula, and, its literal sense being lost, it gradually came to be pronounced in an obscured and indistinct way. From the very start it became *God be wi' ye.* This further contracted into *God bwye*, a form which appears in the dialog of the comedies of the eighteenth century. Having gone so far, the original meaning of the phrase became altogether lost; the first syllable was mistaken for our word *good* and the second for our word *by*, and we reach thus our modern form *good-by.* Many words of the language have become obscured in form

[1] Book I, ll. 460–461.

in the same way. Our Modern English word *lord* is derived from the Old English compound *hlaf-weard*, the first element of which is English *loaf* (of bread), the second *ward* (i. e., guardian), the whole word meaning originally the guardian of the loaf, or supplies in general. This word was, of course, originally a descriptive epithet for protector or leader of the people; in time, however, the elements of the word ceased to be appreciated separately, and since the word stood for a single idea, which was not analyzed into the two notions of *bread* and *guardian*, it came to be pronounced as a simple word. From *hlaf-weard* it became *hlaford*, then, with the loss of the *h*, which was general in all words in the initial position followed by another consonant, *lauerd*, and, finally, *lord*. By a similar process, Modern English *woman* has been derived from Old English *wif-man*, the second element being the generic name for human beings, and the first element *wif-*, the indication of sex. The word having become fixed in the language consciousness of the people as the conventional symbol for the idea woman, it was no longer felt to be necessary to analyze it into its descriptive parts, and it thus contracted into the form *woman*. A like change has made Modern English *stirrup* out of Old English *stīg-rāp*, which literally meant *mounting-rope*, from *stig-*, meaning "to mount" (cf. German *steigen*, and Modern English *stile*, from Old English *stig-ol*), and *rāp*, English *rope*. Modern English *nostril* is derived from the Old English compound *nos-*, "nose" + *ðyril*, "hole," the original compound meaning thus "nose-hole." The word *window* is derived from the two elements *wind*, and *eage*, "eye," the whole meaning "wind-eye," "the eye or hole

by which the wind enters the house." The word *punish* appears also in the obscured form *punch*, the relation in meaning being obvious.

Many further illustrations might be cited of what were originally careless, or better, relaxed, pronunciations, making their way into the written as well as spoken language. For the present, however, it will suffice to point out a few instances in which these relaxed pronunciations have made their way into recognized use in the spoken language, but have not yet succeeded in changing the written language to accord with the pronunciation. Thus we write the compound of *sheep* + *herd*, *shepherd*, but we pronounce it *shepurd* (ʃepərd). The nautical terms *leeward* and *boatswain* are pronounced *lûard* (lûərd) and *bôsen* (bôsən). The adverb and preposition compound *towards* is pronounced *tords* (tərdz), altho other compounds with *-wards*, as, for example, *forwards* and *backwards*, are pronounced approximately as they are spelled, except in the popular speech, where they also have become obscured, as *towards* has in the correct or standard speech, being pronounced there *forards* and *backards* (fərərdz, bækərdz). Other illustrations from correct speech are *wrist-band*, pronounced rizbənd, *cupboard*, pronounced kubərd, *forehead*, pronounced fərəd. A similar development has taken place in many place names and family names. Thus the name Salisbury is phonetically Solsbery (sɔlzberi); the name of one of the colleges of the University of Oxford is *Magdalen*, which is pronounced Maudlin, and which is etymologically precisely the same word as the English adjective *maudlin*. The name Gloucester, originally from Old English Gleawan-ceaster, is pho-

netically Gloster; Leicester is pronounced Lester; and Cirencester, a town in southern England, is pronounced Sister. The discrepancy between the spelling and the pronunciation is much more marked in place names in England than it is in any other English-speaking country; it is so great, indeed, that it offers fair justification for the old story of the traveler, who on his return from a visit to England insisted that the English name Cholmondeley (pronounced Chumly) was spelled Marjoribanks (pronounced Marchbanks).

In all obscured words of the kind that we have been discussing, the same principle is involved. The words were originally spoken distinctly and in full. As time went on, however, and the words came to be very familiar to all persons, it was felt to be unnecessary to give them their full value. They were intelligible in an abbreviated and "telescoped" form, and following the natural law of economy, they came to be used only in this abbreviated form. If we turn now to our contemporary speech we shall find that the same principle holds good. When we speak rapidly or speak even in an ordinary conversational and colloquial tone, we have an entirely different kind of utterance from that which we have when we speak carefully and formally, as when we speak to a person who understands English imperfectly. In the latter cases, each word is given a sharp and clear enunciation and bears a separate stress. In the former cases, the words are run together more; only one or two important words in a group are stressed, the rest being pronounced more or less indistinctly and vaguely. But when a word which in other instances ordinarily has no stress, for some reason, usually that of emphasis or antithesis, is given

a stress, then it becomes clear and distinct and usually has a different phonetic form from that which it has when in unstressed position. Thus the sentence *I saw your sister yesterday*, would normally be pronounced ə sô yər sistər yestərde ; but the sentence *I did n't see your sister but he saw mine*, in which we have two pairs of antithetic, and consequently emphatic, words, *I* and *he*, and *your* and *mine*, would be pronounced ai didnt sî yûr sistər but hî sə main. This difference in the phonetic form of words is sometimes recorded in the spelling, the preposition *of*, for example, usually pronounced ʊv, or simple ə, as in the phrase *time of day*, taim ə dê (cf. *four o'clock*, from *four of clock*), being the unstressed form of which the adverb *off* is the stressed. Likewise the preposition *to*, pronounced tə, as in *I'm going to town*, aim gôiŋ tə taun, is the unstressed form corresponding to the adverbial stressed form *too* (tû). To illustrate this relaxed or natural form of speech a few connected sentences may be quoted, first in the conventional spelling, then in the actual phonetic form of the author's colloquial speech. The sentences are as follows : " What 's the French for ' I don't understand ' ? I want to let this Frenchman know I can't understand what he 's saying. It 's rather odd, I can talk French myself, but I can't understand it when it 's spoken. You should tell them not to speak so fast. I don't believe they can speak slow ; they are too excitable." In ordinary conversational tone, the phonetic form of these sentences would be as follows : hwats ðə frenc fər " ə dônt ʊndərstænd " ? ə want ə let ðis frencmən nô ə kânt ʊndərstænd hwat îz sêiŋ. its ræðər ad, ə kən têk frenc məself, but ə kânt ʊndərstænd it hwen its spôkən. iû ʃud tel ðəm nat tə

spîk so fæst. ə dônt bilîv ðê kæn spîk slô; ðê ər tû iksaitəbəl.[1]

Perhaps not all speakers would use exactly the forms which have been put down in this phonetic transcription as representing, as nearly as possible, the use of the present writer. We must allow for variations among individuals, some persons not only following different customs, but also by nature speaking more slowly and distinctly than others. Thus the phrase, *I can talk French myself* might, in the pronunciation of some speakers, take a fuller form of the pronouns than those given above, being pronounced ai kən tɔk frenc maiself. But the more obscure forms of the pronoun will certainly be heard in the pronunciation of the majority of speakers. Another point should be noticed which our phonetic transcription does not take into account, and that is the matter of binding, or *liaison*, to borrow a term from French. Our custom of separating the words of connected discourse by spacing is purely conventional. It has grown up largely in modern times since the invention of printing. The manuscripts of the earlier periods, in Old English, for example, do not usually separate the individual words, but run them together in a straight ahead, running or cursive, style of writing. This method of writing, tho it would seem strange and inconvenient to us now, is indeed more in accord with our actual manner of speaking than our present printed and written use. For in speaking we do not normally pronounce individual words, but rather phrases or breath-groups, the pauses coming where they are demanded by the logical sense and not before and

[1] Adapted from *Report of a Joint Committee*, etc., p. 42.

after each word. A phonetic transcription of the first two sentences of the above passage, taking account of this *liaison*, or binding of words into breath-groups, would, therefore, be as follows: hwatsðəfrenɛ fərədôntundərstænd? əwantəlet ðisfrenɛmənnô əkæntundərstænd hwatîzsêiŋ.

Perhaps the most interesting and important practical question which arises from the observation of these facts is, What shall be our attitude towards these colloquial or relaxed pronunciations? Shall we try to get rid of them as careless, lazy, and inelegant? Is there an ideal form of the language towards which we should strive and in which such pronunciations shall find no place? One not infrequently meets with speakers who are possessed of this conviction. Such theorists tell us that the article *the* should always be pronounced ðî; the preposition *of* should be av or ɐv; the verb *can* always kæn, never kən, and so with all other words. They tell us that every word should be separated sharply from its neighbors, that there shall be no *liaison* of word with word. They would have us pronounce the phrase *a good deal* as ê gûd dîl, instead of ə gûdîl; *at all* as æt ɐl, instead of ətəl. If the word *suggest* has two g's in the spelling, they would have us pronounce two, sugjest, instead of the normal and natural səjest; or in such words as *nation* and *educate*, they would have us pronounce the words as nêtyən and ediukêt, instead of nêʃən and ejiukêt. Needless to say, this "prunes and prisms" sort of pronunciation is both absurd and impossible. The attempt to carry it out would result in what we should rightly say was a language affected, unnatural, and un-English. The fact is that such theorists

have an entirely false conception of the nature of language, of the authority of the printed or written word, and of the source of what shall be regarded as standard and correct. They forget that the written and printed form of language comes after the spoken form, that it is merely a mechanical invention devised to recall and suggest the real and living language, which is the spoken language. They forget also that the mechanical device of printing and writing can only imperfectly and inadequately represent the sounds of speech, and that speech, to use the figure again which we have already used, like the waves of the ocean, is constantly changing and assuming a multitude of new forms, whereas printing and writing tend to become more and more fixed, conventional, and unchanging. To make speech conform to the printed and written forms of language is very much as tho one should try to make the trees of a forest grow in conformity to an artist's picture of them. Both speech and trees have a life of their own which is free and independent of man's attempts to reduce them to a descriptive formula.

The standards of correct speech must be found, therefore, not in the printed or written form of language, but in the normal, natural conversation of daily life. It might seem that, having elevated the natural speech to this place of dignity, we have justified as right and correct all pronunciations of the colloquial and uncultivated speech which have followed the laws of natural development, and that if we may say tərdz for *towards*, we may just as correctly say fərərdz for *forwards* and bækərdz for *backwards*. It is true that the vulgar pronunciation of *forwards* and *backwards*,

and a host of other words, has followed exactly the same principles that have resulted in the standard pronunciation of *towards* and words of like kind; but it is not true that we are at equal liberty to choose either in our pronunciation. For the law of imitation now enters to determine what shall be chosen and what shall be discarded. To repeat the statement of a preceding paragraph, one that cannot be too clearly held in mind, phonetic laws, as well as all other laws of language, become laws because they sum up or generalize the custom or usage with respect to a body of similar phenomena. They are not laws because they express the mandate of some person or authority empowered to declare what shall be done, but they are laws or rules because they state what actually is done. There is no individual or autocratic power in language, but all work together voluntarily in groups. The popular or uncultivated speech has its laws or rules just as truly as has the standard or correct speech. Consciously or unconsciously every speaker follows the customs or rules of his own special group; for him these are the laws of his language. It has already been sufficiently demonstrated that these laws or rules are not fixed once and for all, but are constantly adapting themselves to each other and changing. Now, what a speaker of to-day is chiefly concerned to know is what the laws or rules of his own present day speech, of his own group, shall be. To determine this there is only one means, and that is observation. He must turn and examine the speech, the living speech, of those persons with whom he is thrown in contact, with such added help as he may get from books and dictionaries in extending the field of his

observation. In case of a doubtful pronunciation, he must determine what group of speakers he will unite himself with, — that is, the customs of what speakers he will imitate or follow. He will observe that at present the law of the popular speech is to pronounce *forwards* as fərərdz, and, extending his observation, he will perceive that it is not the law of cultivated speech so to pronounce the word. The choice of the group with which he will unite himself then lies in his own hands, and, other things being equal, will usually be in favor of the cultivated speech. The pronunciation of the cultivated speech is for him the correct use because he chooses it; it is the law of his language.

It is obvious from what has been said that no pronunciation is absolutely and inherently right and another wrong. Although the standard *towards* (tərdz) and the popular *forwards* (fərərdz) follow the same natural law and linguistically are on the same level, in the one case the result has been accepted by the group of speakers to which the cultivated and educated person wishes to belong, in the other it has not. In so far, therefore, the one is correct and the other is incorrect; it needs, however, only the acceptance of the popular form into general use to make it as correct as the other. Historically it has, of course, often happened that there has been a shifting back and forth of popular and standard forms. Thus, the word *sound* appears without the final *d* in Chaucer:

Soun is noght but air y- broken.[1]

This is the correct form, historically, since the word is derived from Latin *sonum*, the *d* being gratuitously

[1] *House of Fame*, l. 765.

added in later times. Thus, the Elizabethan poet and translator Stanyhurst, commenting on the length of certain syllables in English meter, says: "Yeet *sowning* in English must bee long, and much more yf yt were *sounding*, as thee ignorant generaly, but falslye dooe wryte."[1] Yet the same writer drops a final *d* in the word *rind* from Old English *rinde*, spelling it *ryne*: "Not onlye by gnibling vpon thee outward ryne of a supposed historie."[2] As it happens the forms of these words which later custom has settled upon are *sound* and *rind*, but they might just as well have been *soun* and *rine*. In further illustration of the shifting of the *nd* sound, the word *lawn* may be cited. In Middle English, for example in Chaucer, this word is always *launde*, with a final *d*. Later English has dropped the *d*, as Stanyhurst wanted to do with *rind*.

It is obvious, then, that the burden of responsibility in making a choice between two divergent pronunciations rests on the individual. Every person has not only the liberty of choice, but the necessity of choice. When a question of pronunciation comes up, each must decide for himself the form he will choose to use. If he attempts to put off the responsibility on another, say on a dictionary or the opinion of some one whose advice is sought, he is merely removing the appearance of responsibility, for in these instances he must decide for himself the value of the sources of information which he seeks and which he is willing to imitate or follow blindly. Plainly, also, if the responsibility rests with the indi-

[1] In Gregory Smith, *Elizabethan Critical Essays*, I, 142.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 136. His spelling *gnibling* he apparently derives by analogy to *gnaw*.

vidual, the penalty also falls upon him. If the illiterate person pronounces *forwards* as fərərdz and knows no better, because the field of his observation, his experience, has not made him acquainted with a different pronunciation, he must nevertheless bear the odium of being classed with the uneducated when he comes into contact with the educated. He pays the penalty of his ignorance, and so does every one else who uses forms of language which he would not use if his sensitiveness to, and observation of, language had been keener and broader. Each must decide for himself whom or what group of persons he will regard as cultivated and educated, — that is, the laws and customs of what group he wishes to follow. Each must decide for himself, also, what innovations he can risk. If he choose unwisely, if he follow a false standard of refinement and cultivation, he must bear the consequences until experience and observation shall so far widen his horizon as to enable him to follow the law of the group of which he really wishes to consider himself a part.

14. **The Standard of Pronunciation.** The question of a standard pronunciation has been to a large extent answered in the discussion of the preceding paragraphs. By the term standard of pronunciation, one usually means a fixed norm, an established and accepted form of the language, which shall serve as the model upon which all speakers shall fashion their speech. This standard is elevated to the position of the "correct" speech, all deviations from it being regarded as incorrect. A grave difficulty, however, confronts the student, and this is the difficulty of determining whether there actually is a standard of English pronunciation which shall serve as

the pattern and model for all English-speaking people, and if so, where it is to be found. In the first place, we may safely say that there is no ideal and perfect inherent form of the language, towards which all speakers should strive as towards an ultimate goal. There is no objective system of language outside of the minds and experiences of the people who use and speak the language. In seeking for a standard of pronunciation, consequently, men must look to themselves and their own use, not to some extra-human and ideal system towards which they shall dutifully strive. Any standard which is chosen must be made up from the laws of the actual spoken use of some group of speakers, because it is only in actual spoken use that language really exists.

In the attempt to fix upon some body of spoken use as the standard language, the question may be approached from two points of view, first, the geographical, and, second, the social or educational point of view. In attempting to establish a geographical standard of spoken use, choice is made of the speech of some one region or community, which is to be regarded then as the model for all other communities. In other words, one dialect is chosen as the standard to which all other dialects shall conform. In some countries this principle is recognized in actual practice. The standard French dialect is the dialect of Paris, the standard Italian dialect is the dialect of Florence, or rather of Tuscany, the province in which Florence is situated; and the standard Spanish dialect is the Castilian, the dialect of Madrid. These dialects are standard for their respective countries, however, because the people of these various countries have voluntarily accepted them as their standard,

not because Parisian French or Tuscan Italian or Castilian Spanish have any inherent right to the exclusion of other dialects. It simply so happens that the people of these various countries, in the development of their civilization, have come to look upon certain communities as the center of their national life and culture. Turning to the English-speaking countries, however, we find an entirely different state of affairs. No one community is now accepted as affording the model of speech to which all others must conform. Theoretically we might say that London, as the capital of the native home of the English language, ought to be regarded as the home of the standard language. As an actual fact, however, the speech of London is not so regarded, not even by the British themselves. The English-speaking people throughout the world do not look upon London as affording the ideal speech which it is their duty to imitate and follow. Indeed, so different is the manner of speech of Englishmen from that of Americans that the former is often used in America as the mark of a comedy character on the stage — just as in England "the American accent" is similarly used as a laughter-provoking device. Of course the stage Englishman and American are usually exaggerations, but the normal speech of the two countries is sufficiently divergent to be easily perceived, and too divergent to allow one to stand as a model for the other. "No American speaker or writer ever thinks it needful to adopt the British form of his own language, any more than a British speaker or writer thinks it needful to adopt the American form." [1]

Practically it would be impossible for British English

[1] Freeman, *Some Impressions of the United States*, p. 56.

to serve as the model for American English, or American English for British English. The two peoples, despite their many similarities and relationships, do not come into sufficiently intimate and frequent personal contact to enable them to know directly the manner of speech of each other. And it is of course only by direct personal contact that the speech of one community can impose itself upon that of another.

Coming nearer home, neither do we find in our own country any city, Washington, for example, or any region, which can lay claim to the place of distinction which the French accord to Paris and the Italians to Florence. The speech of Chicago does not feel itself under any compulsion to adapt itself to that of Boston, or that of Boston to that of Chicago. The speech of New York cannot impose itself upon that of New Orleans, or that of San Francisco upon that of St. Louis. In short, we do not acknowledge that the speech of any one community has compelling power over that of any other. We have no acknowledged seat or center of national life and culture, and consequently we do not elevate to the position of a standard the speech of any city or state.

Failing a local geographical standard, the next position would be that the standard speech is not the speech of any one community but the speech of the country as a whole. In answer to this the obvious query comes, Is there a common general speech of the country as a whole? Does the average Bostonian speak like the average Chicagoan? Most certainly not. He does not, not only because he does not want to, but because he could not if he would. The citizen of one community

does not know how the citizens of another speak, because it is only by a long-continued residence in a strange community that a visitor can acquire a wide and exact knowledge of its manner of speech. All we can say is that some comparatively few widely traveled and cosmopolitan speakers have acquired a manner of speech which is general enough not to betray the immediate locality of its origin, tho it must always have characteristics individual enough to class it broadly as Eastern or Western or Southern. With the vast majority of speakers the local characteristics are even more marked. The local characteristics of one community may extend over a wider area than those of another, the dialect characteristics of Virginia, for example, covering a less extent of territory than those of the Middle West; but each, nevertheless, has its local metes and bounds, and for its section they are distinctive. We have already remarked that the speech of large cities especially tends to become markedly local and dialectal. Thus to one observant of such matters, the speech of Boston or Philadelphia is soon perceived to be noticeably different from that of their near neighbor, New York. Theoretically one might say that it is the duty of the speakers of each community to strive for a common and universal speech; that, if the Bostonian will not speak like the Chicagoan or the Chicagoan like the Bostonian, then they should come together on some middle ground. Each region thus yielding some of its individual characteristics, we should arrive at a compromise among the various local speeches which would be a universal, cosmopolitan speech. The obvious obstacle in the way of this theory is that the laws of language are not based on theory, but arise from

actual use. When the Bostonian and Chicagoan are thrown so intimately together, when intercourse between them is so frequent and long-continued that they become practically one in their habits and customs, then, and not till then, will they speak a single speech. Then they will develop a new dialect comprehensive enough in its limits to include both Chicago and Boston. A standard speech cannot be imposed dogmatically; it cannot even be chosen voluntarily. It must grow, as all other customs grow in language, gradually and naturally. And until some such change takes place in the country as a whole, until from a group of more or less clearly defined communities, it becomes one great homogeneous community, so long we shall have local differences of speech and so long will the theory of a universal standard speech remain a vain and empty dream.

Besides the local or geographical aspect of the question, the matter of the standard speech may be approached from a second point of view, the social or educational. We have already pointed out that the speech of different social groups or classes differs widely. The popular, or vulgar, speech is different from that of the educated person, and the colloquial and every-day speech of the latter is different from his careful and formal speech. The question of choice between the popular and illiterate speech and the speech of educated and cultivated people presents little difficulty. Perhaps every one will agree without question that the speech of the uninformed and uninstructed has no claim to be regarded as the standard or correct speech, and that, on the contrary, the speech of the cultivated portion of society has every claim to be so regarded. The diffi-

culty comes not in making the choice, but in preparing the way for the choice, in determining just who are the cultivated and educated and refined speakers whom we are willing to regard as affording the models or laws of the correct or standard speech. The difficulty of defining education, culture, and refinement is one that has often been felt. They are qualities that may be readily perceived when they are exemplified in individuals, but often defy description and analysis. Perhaps the main source of the difficulty lies in the fact that the qualities mentioned are largely matters of opinion, that no person is absolutely educated or refined or cultured. One whom I might regard as an educated and refined person, another, with higher or at least different standards, might regard as uneducated, as crude and vulgar. Everything depends upon the point of view, the predilections, the prejudices, the customary habits and ways of thinking of the person who acts as judge and critic. The bearing of this upon the question of the standard of correct speech is direct. What shall I regard as educated and refined? Where shall I place the line between the lower and the higher, that which is to be approved and imitated and that which is to be condemned and rejected? To these questions there is no general answer. Each person must put the questions to himself and must answer them for himself. He must judge and choose according to his own light and according to his own opportunities of experience and observation. It is the end of education to enable one to make right decisions in such matters, and the whole process of education cannot be stated in a word. It is obviously necessary to make these decisions not only with respect to a few great

Enter Nerriſſa.

Du. Came you from Padua from *Bellario*?

Ner. From both.

My Lord *Bellario* greets your Grace.

Baſ. Why doſt thou whet thy knife ſo earneſtly?

Iew. To cut the forfeiture from that bankrout there.

Gra. Not on thy ſoale: but on thy ſoule harſh Iew
Thou mak'ſt thy knife keene: but no metall can,
No, not the hangmans Axe beare halfe the keenneſſe
Of thy ſharpe enuy. Can no prayers pierce thee?

Iew. No, none that thou haſt wit enough to make.

Gra. O be thou damn'd, inexecrable dogge,
And for thy life let iuſtice be accus'd:
Thou almoſt mak'ſt me wauer in my faith;
To hold opinion with *Pythagoras*,
That ſoules of Animals infuſe themſelues
Into the trunkes of men. Thy curtiſh ſpirit
Gouern'd a Wolfe, who hang'd for humane ſlaughter,
Euen from the gallowes did his fell ſoule fleet;
And whil'ſt thou layeſt in thy vnhallowed dam,
Infus'd it ſelfe in thee: For thy deſires
Are Woluiſh, bloody, ſteru'd, and rauenous.

Iew. Till thou canſt raile the ſeale from off my bond
Thou but offend'ſt thy Lungs to ſpeake ſo loud:
Repaire thy wit good youth, or it will fall
To endleſſe ruine. I ſtand heere for Law.

Du. This Letter from *Bellario* doth commend
A yong and Learned Doctor in our Court;
Where is he?

Ner. He attendeth heere hard by
To know your anſwer, whether you'l admit him.

Du. With all my heart. Some three or four of you
Go giue him curteous conduct to this place,
Meane time the Court ſhall heare *Bellarioes* Letter.

YOur Grace ſhall vnderſtand, that at the receite of your

figures or authorities, not only with respect to public speakers, for example, whom one hears only at rare intervals, but also with respect to one's daily associates and the hourly customs and habits of familiar life. The decisions of the latter kind are naturally the more important ones, but at the same time the ones concerning which it is least possible to give a general guiding rule. Here again individual judgment is the only way we have of deciding who the good speakers are among those whom we meet. We are naturally inclined to regard our own judgment in such matters as universal and final, but this is an assumption that is likely to be questioned as soon as we try to impose our standards and decisions upon others.

The authority of dictionaries and other printed works rests upon somewhat the same basis as that of persons. Dictionaries and other guide-books are the work of finite human beings, and tho, in general, the authors of them are men of exceptional weight and authority because of their greater information and extent of observation, they are nevertheless fallible and limited in their experience. Consequently, when the statement of a dictionary differs from one's own observation, the sensible thing to do, after one has made sure that the observation is true, is to disregard the dictionary altogether and to follow the example of actual use. Moreover, from the nature of the case, dictionaries are bound to become antiquated. Before one gives much weight to the decision of a dictionary, one should make sure that the dictionary is a record of contemporary use. Early editions of Webster's dictionary,[1] for example, record the

[1] The later editions are known as Webster's *International Dictionary*.

pronunciation dif for *deaf*, as well as many other uses that are no longer current or have become quite dialectal. But even the more contemporary dictionaries are not always a certain guide. In the great proportion of instances they, of course, are, since the question of double use arises only infrequently. One should exercise considerable caution, therefore, before one differs from the opinion of a reputable dictionary like the New English Dictionary, the Century, or the Standard, and all the more caution when these various dictionaries agree. Occasions are not wanting, however, in which reputable use is at variance with the united opinion of even the best dictionaries. Thus the word *peremptory* is stressed by both Standard and Century dictionaries only on the first syllable, whereas the pronunciation *perem'ptory* is certainly the more usual one, even among careful speakers. Both dictionaries stress *octopus* only on the second syllable, contrary to the usual custom of stressing it on the first, a pronunciation which is acknowledged as a secondary one by the New English Dictionary. For *culinary* the dictionaries record only the pronunciation kiu'linæri, altho the pronunciation ku'linæri is perhaps as frequently heard. The word *vizor* is recorded as vi'zər or vi'zər, although one hears as often, perhaps more often, the pronunciation vai'zər, or vai'zər. In some instances the dictionaries record two pronunciations, leaving to the choice of each person the one he prefers to use. Thus, we have the forms ædvərtai'zmənt and ædver'tizmənt; skwelər and skwêlər; ske'dʒul, ske'diul, and in England, ʃe'diul. Other words in which the dictionaries as well as usage disagree are numerous. The International (Webster's) Dictionary records only

the pronunciation *o'asis*, which is the preferred form in the Standard Dictionary; but the Century records only *oa'sis*, and the New English Dictionary gives both *oa'sis* and *o'asis*. The pronunciation *oa'sis* is decidedly the more common one in America; its use in England is also attested by the scansion of the following line from Tennyson:

My one oasis in the dust and drouth.

A similar uncertainty obtains in the pronunciation of *legend*, which is sometimes le'jənd and sometimes lî'jənd. One hears also two pronunciations for *progress*, prôgres and prə'gres; and for *drama*, drâmə and drêmə. There is also a divergence of use in certain more or less recent words, as, for example, *vaudeville*, pronounced vô'dəvil or və'dəvil; *automobile*, pronounced ɔtomô'bil or ɔtomobîl'; *coupon*, pronounced ku'pɔn or kiû'pɔn.

Webster's International and the New English Dictionary record only the pronunciations pêtrən and mêtrən for *patron* and *matron*. The Century and Standard give a second pronunciation, pætrən and mætrən. On the other hand, for *patronage* the International and the New English Dictionary give only the form pætrənej, followed also by the Standard; the Century gives as second pronunciation, pêtrənej. For *matronal* the International gives first mætrənəl, second mêtrənəl; the New English Dictionary gives only the second pronunciation; and the Century and Standard give the second as a preferred pronunciation, and the International's first as a secondary pronunciation. Can anything more confusing be imagined than the attempt to reason out a principle of choice from the statements of the dictionaries with respect to these four words?

A pronunciation of the word *hearth* as hurþ, riming thus with *earth*, *birth*, etc., is widely current in the United States, both in popular and in the more careful speech. The only dictionary, however, which recognizes this pronunciation is the Century, which gives it as a second pronunciation. The preferred pronunciation in the Century, and the only one recorded by the International, the New English, and the Standard, is harþ, an assonance to *heart*, *part*, etc. The pronunciation hurþ is not only a legitimate one in present American usage, it is also supported by history. It is indeed a survival from a pronunciation which was once general and standard in English, as is illustrated by the rime in the following lines from Milton's *Il Penseroso:*

> Far from all resort of mirth
> Save the cricket on the hearth.

This pronunciation, according to the New English Dictionary, still persists in Scottish and in the northern dialects of England. And, as we have pointed out, it also persists in good use in American speech, which in many instances has been strongly conservative of earlier usages. An instructive comparison may be made between this pronunciation of *hearth* as hurþ, and the pronunciation of *clerk*. This latter word is always pronounced klurk in American speech, with the same quality of vowel as hurþ. In England, however, the customary pronunciation is klȧrk (with the r, however, slightly pronounced or altogether omitted), a pronunciation which has affected the spelling of the word when it appears as the proper name Clark, Clarke. The pronunciations hurþ, klurk are the more original pronunciations, of which the forms harþ, klark are a later development. This later form is illus-

trated in other words from earlier *-er* in which the spelling has been changed to accord with the pronunciation, such as *bark*, *dark*, *hark*, etc. In the word *seryeant*, and in the words *hearth* and *clerk* as pronounced harþ, klark, the earlier spelling has remained in spite of the change in pronunciation. The word *person* has assumed two orthographic forms, the one cited being the more original form, from which was developed, in a specialized sense, the word *parson*. What has happened, consequently, in American speech, with respect to the words *clerk* and *hearth*, is that in *clerk* the earlier form has persisted as the standard use, whereas in the case of *hearth*, the earlier pronunciation persists pretty generally in the popular speech and to some extent in the cultivated speech, altho in the latter place it tends to be crowded out by the later pronunciation, exemplified in such forms as *heart*, *dark*, *hark*, etc., becoming thus harþ.

One or two further miscellaneous examples of uncertain use may be given. The pronunciation *pa'resis* is the only one recognized by the International, Century, Standard, and the New English Dictionaries. But in actual speech, to some extent in the medical profession and almost always outside it, the pronunciation heard is *pare'sis*. The New English Dictionary authorizes only *rec'ondite;* the International and Standard prefer *recon'dite*, but give as second choice, *rec'ondite*. On the other hand the Century gives *recon'dite* as first choice, and *re'condite* as second. All the dictionaries record only *inqui'ry* (inkwai'ri), disregarding completely the frequently heard pronunciation with stress on the first syllable.

15. **Spelling Reform.** The consideration of the question of spelling reform rightly finds a place in a discussion of English sounds, for the reason that English spelling is merely an outward and visible means of representing the sounds of the language. The language itself existed in all its essentials long before it was reduced to a written or a printed form, just as to-day the illiterate person who knows nothing about reading or writing is nevertheless possessed of the power of language. Spelling or writing is, therefore, nothing more than an attempt to reduce to a fixed and permanent formula what was already pre-existent in the impermanent use of spoken speech. It has already been pointed out, that whatever the immediate descriptive or pictorial character of written language may have been in its origin, it has now completely lost its pictorial value and is merely a set of conventional and arbitrary signs, the significances of which have to be learned and held in mind by a pure act of memory. In this respect written language is on exactly the same level as spoken language. In the latter, as a result of many successive ages of custom and use, we have settled upon certain sounds and sequences of sounds as conveying certain ideas. The value and meaning of these sounds and groups of sounds have to be learned anew by every individual who acquires command of the language. Parents, by a long period of discipline and instruction, teach their children how to make the sounds and what ideas the sounds stand for. No child has the command of language inherently and by nature, but only as he learns it by imitating the speech of others. In the same way, through a long process of development, we have come

to settle upon certain written symbols and groups of symbols as standing for certain sounds and groups of sounds. Every child now learns to make this arbitrary connection between the symbol and the sound, just as before he had learned to make a connection between the various sounds and the respective ideas which they were used to designate. Now, having settled upon a conventional set of visible written symbols to stand for audible spoken sounds, the question of reform in our system of visible written symbols arises when an endeavor is made to make more perfect or consistent our system of symbols. Spelling reform, indeed, is only a name for this endeavor when it becomes conscious. More or less unconscious spelling reform has been going on ever since the beginning of written language, because from the very beginning written language has been changing in order to adapt its system to the changes in the spoken language. When, for example, in the Middle English period, the initial consonant in such Old English words as *hring*, *hleap-an*, and *hrof* ceased to be pronounced, and the words consequently were spelled *ring*, *leap*, and *roof*, that was as much a spelling reform as any that can be advocated nowadays. It is safe to say that every change in spelling that has taken place in the history of the language has taken place because some one thought the change a necessary or advisable improvement in the system of spelling. The motive underlying the change may not always have been wise or well considered, but it is certain that changes have never taken place in a completely haphazard and causeless way.

The question is sometimes asked, Why is it necessary for us to think about the matter of spelling at all?

Since our system of spelling is an arbitrary and conventional one, does it matter much what conventions we use? Why should we set to work consciously to alter or improve that which, when all is said, is certainly capable of performing, and for many generations has performed, the service for which it is intended? Or it is urged that if any changes are to be made, we should leave them to the next generation or the third or the fourth, or to whatever generation feels compelled to make them. To all these queries and objections the answer is, that we are under no necessity of considering the question of spelling reform. No matter how complicated or inconsistent or imperfect our system of written speech may be, if we wish to do so, we can make it serve. Englishmen have not lived and spoken and written all these generations without evolving a written and spoken language which is to some, or rather to a high degree, adequate to the purposes for which it was devised. The question, therefore, of the improvement of English spelling is not one of necessity; it is one of desire and inclination. If the present English spelling affords a fairly serviceable medium of written expression, it does so because it has been an object of deepest thought and consideration to many generations of English-speaking peoples. Spelling is a human institution, and like all human institutions, it has had its crude beginnings, it has grown as a result of the effort of individuals, and it has improved by rectifying its errors and by correcting its imperfections. That it has now reached a state of ultimate perfection, that it is incapable of further improvement, the history of other human institutions forbids us to believe. We might as

well refuse to think of aërial navigation, because we are already able to move upon the earth and the water by electricity and steam, as refuse to look to the future of our language because our fathers have handed down to us their form of the language. The endeavor of every one truly interested in the welfare of his speech will be to make that speech more perfect and effective. He will not rest content in a blind conservatism, but will be alert and quick to see the value of suggested improvement. The matter of the improvement of English spelling is specially one for the present generation. Each period is confronted with its own particular problems in language, and it is on the way in which each period solves its problems that the language of the future depends. For our period, one of the problems is certainly the question of spelling reform, and it is one deserving of careful consideration and of a fair and reasonable answer. Our danger of error is no greater, perhaps is less great, than it has been in any preceding period, and equable judgment and sound scholarship are as well able to care for the language of the future as they ever were in the past.

Just in what respect the accepted spelling may be improved and simplified must be determined by a separate discussion of individual instances, and as in the case of the changes in sounds discussed in preceding paragraphs, the final acceptance of these changed or improved or reformed spellings must rest upon the desire, or, to use the term previously employed, the imitation, of the individuals who use the written and printed form of the language. It should be remembered that the chief obstacle in the path of improved spelling is a result of

exactly the same cause which has made change and improvement desirable. Spelling was at first free to adapt itself to the spoken forms of words. The simple and natural rule of spelling was to write as you speak. Consistency in the spelling of an individual and general uniformity among all writers were not regarded as necessary, or even as virtues towards which one should strive. In Old English, for example, not only will the same word be spelled differently by different writers, but even the same writer does not always use the same spelling. This freedom in the treatment of spelling persists down through the time of Chaucer, even down through Shakspere and later. One need only turn to an early quarto or folio edition of one of Shakspere's plays, an edition in which the spelling has not been normalized and modernized, to see that the rules of Elizabethan spelling were much less uniform and consistent than they are in Modern English. To find in our time an attitude towards spelling parallel to that of Shakspere's, we must turn to the use of those whom we should now call the imperfectly educated, those who spell very much as they feel inclined. The reason why the spelling of Shakspere and of the contemporary imperfectly educated person is on the same plane, is that neither of these has acknowledged, or in fact is aware of, the ideal of a perfectly consistent and uniform system of spelling. This is an invention of comparatively modern times, and it is only in modern times that it has been made a requirement and a test of the conventionally educated person.

The causes which have operated to bring about this change of attitude towards spelling are mainly the ex-

tension of the reading public and the influence of the dictionaries and spelling-books. The influence of printing and of the rules of the printing-houses upon English spelling has been very great. In the first place, the printer with his professional sense of the importance of the mechanical side of his art, always strives for complete consistency and regularity. He makes his margins always the same width, his words are always spaced exactly so far apart, he uses the same kind of type always for the same purpose, and in countless ways he endeavors to make his work as mechanically uniform and regular as possible. Obviously, one of the first things to which he would direct attention would be the question of a uniform spelling; and so we find with the rise of the great printing-houses in England in the eighteenth century the origins of a rigidly uniform system of spelling. About the same time regularizing tendencies began to show themselves also in the making of dictionaries and spelling-books, the purpose of which was to choose from the various spellings and to record what was regarded as the one standard and correct spelling of words. This standard of correct spelling was usually derived from contemporary printed books, and consequently the dictionaries gave nothing more than the statement of the spelling rules of the printing houses. Among the dictionaries, the most influential was Dr. Johnson's, the first edition of which appeared in 1755. This book purported to give the correct spelling of all words, and it and other later dictionaries after its model have had great influence in spreading the belief that words have only one permissible and correct spelling, and that the one recorded by themselves.

The unconscious influence of the printed word has also been making for a fixed and conventional spelling. Men read so much nowadays, newspapers, books, magazines, and divers forms of printed literature, that the printed word has come to seem almost more real than the spoken word. The former certainly is more obvious, more tangible, one might say, and more permanent, and it leaves a more definite and lasting impression on the memory than the spoken word. The result of these influences, of that of the printing-houses, of the dictionaries and rule books for spelling, and of printed literature in general, has been to raise the printed word to a position of undeserved importance. It tends more and more to detach itself from the spoken word and to become an independent and conventional symbol for the former. Spelling thus becomes a thing apart, a system with its own rules and regulations that have no relation to anything else. We thus have spelling for spelling's sake, instead of the natural state of affairs, which is spelling for speaking's sake.

Recognizing the danger of being tyrannized over by an unyielding system of conventional spelling, we have the relief in our own hands. We should remember that whatever authority the dictionary maker and the printer have, they have it because the voluntary assent of the people grants it to them. Neither dictionary maker nor printer is a lawgiver who has power to legislate finally as to what spellings shall be and what shall not be. They are individuals, as are all other users of the language, and they acquire their authority just as other individuals do, that is, by the willingness of others to follow and imitate them. Granting this, the way of

the spelling simplifier or improver is clear. He may choose to follow the spelling of the dictionaries and the printers when he sees no good reason for deviating from it; but when he chooses to deviate from it, he has as great right, and if his judgment is as sound, as good authority for doing so, as the dictionary has for preventing him.

The most radical scheme of spelling reform is that which is proposed by the advocates of a phonetic alphabet. They point out to us that spelling, or the visible form of language in general, is intended merely as a representation of spoken language, and that as such it should be used with systematic consistency and exactness. They show that, on the contrary, our present spelling in some instances uses letters which are not pronounced at all, as the final *e* in *late*, the *ue* of *tongue*, the *l* of *walk;* in others uses the same letter with different values, as the *c* in *cent* and *call;* the *a* in *hat*, *hate*, *hall;* and in still others uses different letters with the same value, as *s* and *c* in *sent*, *scent*, and *cent;* *a* and *-ey* in *hate* and *they;* *e* and *ee* in *he* and *see*. In short, they point out what is certainly true, that our present spelling, for one reason and another, has become a very imperfect and inconsistent means of representing our present sounds. As a corrective of all these evils, the phonetic reformers propose that an entirely new alphabet be invented, one in which each sound has its own symbol and in which no symbol has more than one value, that this new alphabet replace the old traditional alphabet, and then that every word be written in this new set of symbols as it is pronounced. The advantage of such a reform, if it could be carried through, would

be undeniably great. Our spelling would then be logical and systematic. Foreigners learning English would be relieved of one of the chief difficulties which now lie in their way. Both practically and theoretically such a system of phonetic spelling would approach the ideal of the relation which should exist between the spoken and the written word. Unfortunately, however, there is not the remotest possible chance that any such radical reform could ever be put into operation. If our language were in the hands of some autocratic power who by an imperial edict was able to declare that this or that shall henceforth be the law of the language, there might be some hope for the phonetic reformer. But the English language is not in the hands of an individual, or even in the hands of a group of individuals. It is the most democratic of all the institutions of a democratic people. What the people do and what the people will is the law of the language. Now experience has shown that the will of the people is inalterably opposed to any such wholesale and violent overturning of their traditional language as the phonetic reform supposes. Our present system of spelling has come to be as it is slowly and gradually. It has its roots deeply fixed in the past. It is the form in which an ancient and dignified literature is recorded, and on all sides it is worthy of the deep respect and veneration which we rightly pay to our heritage of national and social tradition. The attempt, therefore, to replace the accepted spelling by a system of entirely new manufacture is not only impossible, but it does violence to a sentiment of respect and a feeling for the language which has always existed and which should

always be cherished. It is not by such revolutionary methods that the spelling of the future is to be made better than the spelling of to-day. Now, as ever in language, changes must take place slowly and gradually. They must come because they meet with the approval of the general body of the users of the language, not because they seem good to some maker of systems and theories.

A compromise phonetic reform is that which would endeavor to get along with our present alphabet, but would so reconstruct the spelling of words that they would be spelled systematically in the phonetic way as far as is possible with the traditional alphabet. Thus the words *doe* and *dough*, being pronounced alike would be spelled alike, both perhaps *do*, by analogy to *so*. The same spelling could not of course answer for *doe* and *dough* and also for the verb *do;* the latter would therefore have to be changed, say to *doo*, to conform to the spelling *too*, *school*, *food*, etc. If, however, *oo* were settled upon as having the value of the vowel in *do*, then the word *rule* would have to be spelled *rool* (like *spool*), *through* would be spelled *throo*, *who* would become *whoo*, *fruit* would become *froot* (like *root*), and so on through a countless number of similar changes. Now again, altho many of these changes would doubtless conduce to simplicity and regularity, the same objection holds against carrying out a systematic and comprehensive scheme of spelling reform along these lines as against one based on the use of a phonetic alphabet, and that is, that the changes necessitated are too numerous, and the violence done to the natural conservative feeling for the language is too great. The work of reform must proceed more slowly.

ST. THOMAS COLLEGE
LIBRARY

A third comprehensive and systematic scheme of spelling reform, which is the exact opposite of that proposed by the phonetic reformers, is the one which, recognizing the difficulty of making English spelling conform to English pronunciation, seizes the other horn of the dilemma, and proposes that English pronunciation be made to conform to English spelling. The advocates of this theory, if there are any serious enough in its defense to be called its advocates, point out that we now have an approximately fixed and rigid system of spelling, and that it seems to be easier for us to make our spelling fixed and permanent and standard than our pronunciation. Why not, therefore, make spelling the standard of pronunciation, and instead of trying to write as we speak, speak as we write? This ingenious proposal has one main obstacle in its way, an obstacle which, as we have had occasion to remark, lies in the way of many another proposal for the reform of language, and that is that the English language does not grow and adapt itself to the far-reaching plans of theorists, but as it lives and is utilized in the every-day intercourse of life. The history of English pronunciation has shown that in a comparatively very small number of words, the written form has reacted upon the spoken form and altered its pronunciation to conform to the spelling; thus, our word *perfect* (purfekt) is originally a learned spelling, based on the Latin *perfectum*, for the word which was spelled *parfit* in Chaucer and which was pronounced as it was written. The learned spelling, however, not only crowded out the spelling *parfit*, but even, in time, made the pronunciation *parfit* conform to the spelling *perfect*. On the other hand, the word

debt, which Chaucer spelled and pronounced *det*, because it is ultimately derived from Latin *debeo*, *debitum*, was given a *b* by the Renascence spelling reformers; this *b*, tho we have retained it in our spelling, *debt*, has never succeeded in making its way into the pronunciation as has the *c* in *perfect*. Other examples might be cited, but the instances in which pronunciation has adapted itself to the spelling of words are so few that they show the futility of the endeavor to make the principle of speaking as you write one of general application.

But if the theories for the reconstruction of English spelling which have just been discussed must be pronounced as impossible and visionary, it does not follow that nothing can be done for the English spelling of the present and of the future. We may refuse our support to radical and revolutionary movements without passing to the other extreme of ultra-conservatism. There is a middle ground between the complete reform of English spelling and unquestioning acquiescence in and acceptance of that which we have; and instead of attempting the thoro reconstruction of our spelling, we may more safely and with greater hope of success strive for the improvement and simplification of our present system. Any changes which are made must be duly considered; they must be tested by the principles which have governed the growth of the language in the past, because it is only by the study of these historical principles that we acquire a knowledge of language and acquire safe rules of guidance. Each change or each group of changes, therefore, offers a special problem which demands special consideration.

Only a few of the more important can be discussed here.

A large number, perhaps the majority of instances, in which the question of spelling arises, come under the general head of choice between two spellings, both of which already are in current use. The determination of the choice rests of course upon the circumstances of each case, but a good rule of general application is, of two spellings choose the simpler. Other things being equal, that is always the simpler and the preferable of two spellings which is the shorter, or which is in conformity with the more general phonetic practice of the language. When one has the choice between a familiar English spelling and a strange or unusual spelling, the preference should be for the former. Thus there is little justification for the spelling *gaol* when we have the form *jail*, or for the spelling *troupe* when we have *troop*.[1]

In making simplifications in spelling, however, it should be remembered that it is not necessary, or indeed possible, to be thoroly consistent. We may decide to omit certain silent letters, but it does not follow that we should omit all silent letters. We may omit the *u* in *honour* without omitting it in *course*, thus spelling that word like the noun *corse*. The only safe guiding rule is to simplify spelling when there are advantages to be gained and no counterbalancing losses. Complete lists

[1] "Early in the first scene of his *Critic*, Sheridan used the word 'troop' in the sense of a theatrical company of actors; also Malone, in his edition of Shakespeare published in 1821 (Vol. iii, p. 175), uses the word 'troop' in the same sense. I must quote them as my authority. Perhaps I may be wrong, but I prefer 'troop' to 'troupe.'" H. M. Trollope, *Life of Molière*, p. viii.

of these possible simple spellings cannot be given here, but a few of the classes of words affected may be indicated.[1]

In general they will be found to fall under three main heads, as follows:

(I) Of two possible spellings, choose the one which follows the usual spelling of the language.

(*a*) Write center, meter, miter, theater, etc., like father, winter, manner, etc.

(*b*) Write criticize, penalize, legalize, and so in all words with the -ize suffix, avoiding thus the two forms -ise and -ize. Also in the roots of words with the two spellings s and z, choose z as being the usual representation for the sound; examples are raze, teazel, vizor, devize, comprize, surprize, and so forth.

(*c*) Write e (instead of æ, œ) in word likes esthetic, encyclopedia, medieval, archeology, dieresis, etc.

(*d*) Write -ow instead of -ough in plow.

(*e*) Write -i for -y in gipsy.

(II) Omit silent letters wherever usage permits it.

(*a*) Write abridgment, judgment, acknowledgment, etc., instead of abridgement, etc. Write the plurals of all nouns ending in o in -os, that is, potatos, tomatos, negros, pianos, cargos, folios, etc.

(*b*) Write ax, adz, develop, domicil, envelop, glycerin, wo, etc., instead of axe, adze, develope, etc.

[1] For further discussion, students are referred to the lists of double spellings given in Webster, Worcester, and the Standard Dictionaries; also to circulars of the Simplified Spelling Board, where lists are printed of words in common use which are spelled in two or more ways. Attention may be called also to the long lists of Amended Spellings at the end of the Century Dictionary, together with the introductory remarks preceding these lists. All interested in the question of English spelling should communicate with the Simplified Spelling Board, 1 Madison Avenue, New York City, whose interesting publications will be sent free on application

(*c*) Write bun, distil, fulfil, fulness, etc., instead of bunn, distill, etc.

(*d*) Write wagon, fagot, woolen, etc., instead of waggon, faggot, woollen, etc.

(*e*) Omit the final -me of words like programme, etc., writing program, gram, diagram, etc.; the final -te of words like epaulette, writing epaulet, omelet, coquet, etc.; the final -ue of words like prologue, writing prolog, dialog, catalog, decalog, etc.

(*f*) Instead of honour, etc., write honor, ardor, fervor, savior, color, etc.

(III) Use phonetic spelling whenever it seems advisable to do so, that is, whenever usage has so far accustomed the reader to the phonetic spelling that his attention will not be distracted too much to the new form of the word. Some phonetic spellings are of course now conventional and regular, as, for example, *fancy*, *fantasy*, with initial *f* instead of *ph*. So also with *fantom* instead of *phantom*, and *sulfur* instead of *sulphur*. By the same analogy we should also write *fonetic*, *fonograf*, *fosfate*, *fotograf*, etc., spellings which are at present questioned, but which are bound to be the spellings of the future. The past tenses of verbs like *cross*, *crush*, *clip*, *mix*, that is, verbs in which the stem ends in a voiceless continuant or stop consonant, may be formed merely by the addition of *t*, giving instead of *crossed*, *crushed*, etc., the forms *crost*, *crusht*, *clipt*, etc These phonetic spellings are to be found frequently in the poets, whose writings, making as they do a special appeal to the ear, are likely to be more phonetic than those of prose authors; but numerous instances of their use may also be found in works written in prose. Likewise the spelling *altho* and *tho* are of not uncommon occurrence in literature, either with the apostrophe added to indicate the loss of *ugh* (*altho'*, *tho'*), or without the apostrophe. The omission of the *ugh* is a natural and easy simplification, and the spelling *tho*, *altho*, and *thoroly* should

be generally accepted. With many persons, some hesitation is felt with respect to the form *thru* for *through*, recommended by the American Educational Association, the Simplified Spelling Board, and various other bodies. The spelling *thru*, however, is logical (*u* after *r* has the value *û*, as in *rule*, *rude*, *rune*, *ruminate*, etc.), and a good deal of the disfavor with which it is regarded is due to the novelty of the form. But the use of any spelling cannot be made compulsory, and any one who disapproves of the form *thru* has perfect right to refuse to use it, altho the same liberty of choice which one claims for oneself one should allow to others. In spelling reform, as in all other developments in language, we must trust to a frank interchange of opinion and a ready acceptance of the best for the accomplishment of changes that shall be of permanent and general value.

VI

ENGLISH WORDS

1. **The Study of Words.** The study of words is in many respects the most approachable side of the study of language. This is true partly because the word is, in a way, an independent fact of language, and is thus much more readily appreciated than are sounds or inflections. Besides, the word has very immediate connections with thought. A history of the words of a language is almost a complete history of the thought and the civilization of the people which speaks that language. The study of words is also of very great importance in the practical affairs of every-day life. One of the most valuable accomplishments a person can have is the ability to express himself clearly and forcibly in language, and to do this he must know how to use words, must know their significances, their connotations, and their possibilities. Of course no one supposes that mere information about words, however wide that information may be, will make a good writer or speaker; it is the just combination of thought with its appropriate words that is the result to be attained, and it is the proper purpose of the study of words to provide the unclothed thought with its fitting garb of expression.

All words have established themselves in the language in one of two ways, first, either by original creation, that is, the actual formation of new words or the new adapta-

tion of old ones, this latter process being as much creation as the formation of new words outright; or second, by borrowing from other languages. These two methods of building up the vocabulary of the English language will now be considered in detail.

2. **Word Creation**. The question which probably rises first in the mind of the student of vocabulary is, What is the ultimate origin of the native words of the language with which we are so familiar? Did some primitive language creator fashion all words at one fixed time, and have we continued to use this original stock since then without adding our creations to it? Or does the creation of words still continue as an active process? To these questions the first answer is that by far the greater number of words are inherited from countless generations of speakers of the language who have preceded us. Our native words are therefore mainly a traditional inheritance just as our other common social possessions, as, for example, the organization of the family or the state, are traditional inheritances. They go back so far that their first origin is prehistoric and can be considered and explained only with the aid of theory.

The earliest and most primitive theoretical stage of language about which it is fruitful to reflect is the period of root-creation. To understand this stage of language we may examine the parallel to it in the language of children when they are first learning to speak. To a child such a word as "ball" may mean anything which has one of the characteristics of a ball, for example, that of roundness. Thus he may call an apple "ball," or a round stone, or the moon, or anything round. To him the word "ball" expresses the root-idea of anything with

the quality of roundness. So to a child the word "choo-choo," to use a childish word, may mean a train of cars, or a steam engine, or even things which to an older and more observant person are not at all like these, for example, a tea-kettle with the steam coming from it. In very primitive stages of human development we may suppose a state of affairs similar to that in the language of the child. Language consisted of a more or less limited number of generalized word-forms, or root-words, of wide application, but of corresponding indefiniteness of meaning.

The first thing which primitive speakers would naturally strive to do, would be to make these root-words more specific in their values so that language could be more exact. There would thus begin a development and specialization in the use of words which has continued to the present day, and which will continue so long as the language is a living, spoken, and written medium of expression.

These later developments in specialization did not often take the direction of the creation of new roots. This is a power which probably became restricted in very early periods of the development of language, and which is now almost completely lost in English, being exemplified only in the invention of words the mere sound of which is descriptive of the objects they name. Examples of such "echoic words," as they have been called, are *boom*, *fizz*, *simmer*, *sizzle*, *pop*, *snicker*, *whir*, *whiz*, etc. More usually, however, specialization in vocabulary has come about in historic times not through the creation of new roots, but by means of the adaptation and development of old material. Such adaptations are still to be regarded as

creations in language, since it is by an internal development of its own resources that the language increases its power and variety. This remains to-day a frequent method of growth in language, and some of the more important of these changes, which may be grouped under the general head of differentiation in vocabulary, will now be considered.

3. **Differentiation by Gradation.** As a means of differentiating the meaning of words, gradation is no longer an active principle in English, altho the workings of it in earlier periods are still to be observed in many Modern English words. The way in which words are differentiated in meaning by gradation may be best described by means of an illustration. We have, for example, the verb "drive," with its principal parts "drive," "drove," "driven." The form "drive" may also be a noun, as in the phrase "a long drive"; so also "drove" appears as a noun in "a drove of cattle"; and the first three letters of "driven" in "a drift of snow." We have, therefore, in these words a sort of root-form of word for the general idea of driving, which might be expressed by merely the consonant framework of it as *drv* or *drf*. To differentiate this generalized root-meaning, the language places different vowels in this consonant frame, in this instance the vowels ai, ô, and i. Gradation is most readily observed in Modern English in the tense formation of the irregular or strong verbs, as "sing," "sang," "sung," to which add also the noun "song"; "ride," "rode," "ridden," to which add the nouns "raid" and "road"; "rise," "rose," "risen"; "bear," "bore," "borne," to which add the noun "bier," that upon which a body is borne, and "bairn," one who

is born in the natural sense, and the nouns "birth" and "burden." Many of the words of the language are thus held together in such gradation groups, all of the words of the respective groups having the same general meaning but each being a specific application of that meaning. Not all words, however, are members of gradation groups, some of the oldest and most familiar words in the language, such as "house," "stone," "water," etc., apparently standing quite separate and independent. Words of this sort are, therefore, the only recognizable surviving representatives of the original root-words.

4. **Differentiation by Composition.** The method of word formation or differentiation by composition is one that has existed from very early times and is still actively employed in the English language. It consists not in changing the root-form of the word, but in adding something to it, in placing side by side two previously independent elements, which then fuse into a single meaning, different from the meaning of either element taken singly. The most obvious kind of composition is that in which we have the juxtaposition of two words each of which, taken separately, has a definite and clear meaning. We may call this the composition of full-words, the various kinds of full-words still compounded in English being as follows:

(*a*) Noun + noun compounds, as in *typewriter*, *door-sill*, *saw-horse*, *window-frame*, *pleasure-trip*, *pleasureground*, *Mayfair*, *shot-gun*, *silvertip* (the grizzly bear), etc. In all these instances we have two ideas loosely approximated, to form a new idea, the specific value of the new idea being intrusted to the inference of the speaker or hearer. This method of composition approaches the use of the adjective

before the noun, but differs from it, as can be seen by comparing "a gold ring" and "a goldmine"; or the sentences "This cane has a silver tip" and "This bear is a silvertip."

(*b*) Adjective + noun compounds, as in *blackbird, blackberry, Broadway, highway, whitewash, hotbed, busybody, shortcut, quickstep, sweetbread,* etc.

(*c*) Noun + adjective compounds, as in *penny-wise, pound-foolish, water-tight, grass green, man-shaped, purse-proud, stone-cold;* cf. *King Richard III*, Act I, Sc. 2, l. 5: "Poor *key-cold* figure of a holy king."

(*d*) Adverb + verb compounds, forming nouns, as in *downfall, downpour, output, upstart, upshot, offshoot, undertow,* etc.

(*e*) Verb + adverb compounds, forming nouns, in words usually of only very colloquial character, as in "*the go-by,*" "*a come-down,*" "*a break-up,*" "*a cut-off,*" "*a walk-over,*" "*a dug-out,*" etc.

(*f*) Adjective or adverb + adjective or adverb, as in *blue-green, unheard-of, ever-young, evergreen, long-winded, worldly-wise, outright.*

(*g*) Adverb + verb compounds, forming verbs, as in *undo, overdo, underrate, gainsay, withstand,* etc.

(*h*) Preposition compounds, as in *into, because, beside, alongside, unto, until,* etc.

(*i*) Particle compounds, as in *nevertheless, altho(ugh), altogether, notwithstanding, always,* etc.

(*j*) Verb stem (originally imperative) + noun, expressing the object of the action of the verb idea, as in *breakwater, breakfast, driveway, standpoint, scapegrace, scarecrow, turnkey, carryall,* etc.[1]

(*k*) Phrase compounds, groups of words which through long custom have come to be written together, as in *father-*

[1] See Bradley, *Making of English,* p. 114. To this group belongs *view-point,* a compound so recent that it is regarded as objectionable by many.

in-law, *man-of-war*, *tradesman* (originally *trade's man*, a man of trade), *goodnight* (from *I wish you a good night*), *hand-to-mouth*, etc.

It is often very difficult to tell whether a compound should be written with a hyphen or hyphens or without them. The usage of good writers, of dictionaries, and of the printing houses differs widely in this respect. In general we may say that the closer the compound the less need there is of the hyphen. It is a safe rule, therefore, to use the hyphen only where it seems necessary, and this will have to be determined largely by one's own judgment and observation. It should be noted also that there is often no essential difference between words which are written as compounds and other words which are never so written, as, for example, "out of" and "into" in the sentence, "He fell out of the frying-pan into the fire." So words like "notwithstanding," "nevertheless," etc., are written together, whereas the approximately equivalent words, "on the contrary," "in spite of," etc., are never so written. The question is one which often has to be left to the arbitrary decision of usage.

5. **Obscure Compounds**. Attention has already been called to the fact (pp. 142 ff.) that one element of a compound word tends to become obscured in pronunciation, and thus to lose its significance. As result of this tendency we now have a great many words in English which were formerly compounds of full-words, and which were felt as such, but which now no longer show the elements of which they are composed. Examples are *window*, from Old English *wind* + *eage*, "wind-eye";

nostril, from Old English *nos* + *þyrel*, "nose-hole"; *starboard*, from Old English *steor* + *bord*, "steer-board," the board (cf. sea-board), or side of a boat, from which the steering is done; *hussy*, from Old English *hus* + *wif*, "house-wife"; *woman*, from Old English *wif* + *man*; *gossip*, from Old English *god* + *sib*, literally "god-friend," used first of the sponsors at baptism, then of any familiar friend of the family, then by natural transition to its present meaning of gossip; *stirrup*, from Old English *stig* + *rap*, "mounting-rope"; *dipsey* (as in dipsey chantey), from *deep* + *sea*; *brimstone*, from *brin* (by metathesis from "burn," cf. Germ. brennen) + *stone*, "burn-stone"; *barn*, from Old English *ber* + *ærn*, *ber* = "barley," *ærn*, "building," the whole word meaning, therefore, "building in which barley was kept"; *orchard*, from Old English *ort* + *geard*, literally "garden yard," the first element being probably the same as Latin *hortus*. In a word like *cupboard* the compound has become obscured in pronunciation, altho the spelling still keeps clear the elements of which it is composed. In many instances popular etymology has endeavored to make full compounds out of words which were of quite different etymological origin. Thus the word *hiccough*, pronounced *hickup*, seems really to be derived from a form *hicket*, the first syllable *hick-* being allied to the form *hack-*, as in "a hacking cough," and the syllable *-et* being merely a diminutive suffix. The spelling *hiccough* arose apparently because the word was thought to have something to do with the word cough. Other familiar instances of similar popular etymologies are *sparrow-grass* from *asparagus*; *ash-falt* from *asphalt*; *causeway* from the French word *chaussèe*, meaning a

high-road; *crayfish*, or popularly *crawfish*, from Old French *crevice*, Modern French *écrevisse*. The word *hackneyed*, as in "*a hackneyed phrase*," meaning something worn down from constant usage, derived from the Old French *haquenée*, "an ambling horse or mare," then by extension, any horse put out to public hire, and by still further extension, anything overworked, is sometimes etymologized into *hack-kneed*. In all these instances more or less unfamiliar words are explained in terms of other words, the forms of which at least are more familiar, altho their connection in meaning with the original word is often quite remote.

6. **Compositional Elements.** Besides the composition of full-words, English makes frequent use of certain word-forms which, taken separately, do not have any clear and full meaning, but which are used only as prefixes and suffixes to make more specific the meaning of other words. These compositional elements, as they may be called, may possibly all have been full-words at some remote period, but if so this full meaning of most of them has been lost more completely than it has in the case of the obscure compounds mentioned in the preceding section. The method by which compositional elements are used to differentiate the meaning of words is too familiar to need extended illustration. The element *-dom*, for example, forms compounds like *kingdom*, *wisdom*, *freedom*, etc.; *-hood* forms the compounds *knighthood*, *childhood*, *manhood*, *priesthood*, etc.; *-ship* appears in *friendship*, *kinship*, *worship*, *fellowship*, etc.; *-er* is very common as a suffix in nouns of agency, as in *baker*, *writer*, *singer*, *driver*, *teetotaler*, *abstainer*, etc. Examples of prefixes are *a-* in *arise*, *alight*; *be-* in *bedeck*,

berate, *bespeak*, etc. It is to be noted that the free use of compositional elements to form new words has been very much restricted by traditional usage. With the suffix *-th* we can form the noun *youth* from *young*, *truth* from *true*, *mirth* from *mer(ry)*, *wealth* from *weal*, *health* from *heal*, etc.; but we cannot form *gloomth* from *gloom*, or *wrongth* from *wrong*, or *illth* from *ill*, etc. Moreover, certain compositional elements tend to take on a very specific value, not of course to the extent of becoming full-words, altho they acquire the power of changing the root word in a very definite way. Thus the prefix *be-* has acquired to a considerable extent the power of giving a derogatory or slightly contemptuous sense to the word with which it is compounded, as in *bepraise*, *befog*, *bedeck*, *bedizen*, *bedevil*, *belabor*, *bedaub*, *besmear*, *bemire*, *befuddle*, *becalm*, *bedraggle*, *bemuse*. This value of *be-* is illustrated in the following stanza of Kipling's *Cruisers*:

> As our mother, the Frigate, *bepainted* and fine,
> Made play for her bully, the Ship of the Line;
> So we, her bold daughters by iron and fire,
> Accost and destroy to our master's desire.

So also the suffix *-ard*, when it is limited to persons, is used only in a derogatory sense, as in *coward*, *sluggard*, *niggard*, *wizard*, *dullard*, *dastard*, *bastard*, *dotard*, *drunkard*, beside which we have only a few nouns, such as *blizzard*, *gizzard*, *custard*, *mustard*, etc., of various etymological origins. The suffix *-ish* also has an interesting history. In the earlier periods of the language it was used to form adjectives of quality without particular connotation, as in *Englisc*, "English," *folcisc*, "folkish" (i. e., to use the modern Latin equivalent word, "pop-

ular"); and Chaucer (Troilus and Criseyde, V, l. 1813) even speaks of "hevenish melodye." Later the suffix came to be applied to adjectives in order to indicate a slight degree of the quality named by the adjective, as *bluish*, *brackish*, *sweetish*, etc., and then, perhaps through such words as *boyish*, *girlish*, to give a somewhat contemptuous or scornful turn to the word, as in *womanish*, *mannish*, *childish*, as compared with *womanly*, *manly*, *childlike*, and in other adjectives like *bookish*, *heathenish*, etc.[1] In Chaucer, however, the suffixes *-ly* and *-ish* had not yet been differentiated. This is shown by his phrase, "heavenish melody," with which compare his use of *fiendly* where we should now have to say *fiendish*:

> That man hath a feendly herte.
> *Book of the Duchess*, 593.

Inflectional elements are often closely related to compositional elements, and, as has already been pointed out,[2] many of them were probably independent full-words which have become very much obscured in the course of time.

7. **Differentiation by Metaphor.** This method of differentiating the meanings of words consists in changing a word from one order of thought to another without changing its form. This may be done in various ways, as follows:

(1) A concrete term may be changed from one concrete sense to another, as, for example, the word *crane*, originally

[1] It is interesting to note that a parallel development has taken place in the case of the same ending, *-isch*, in German, as in words like *diebisch*, *närrisch*, etc. See Brugmann, *The Nature and Origin of the Noun Genders*, pp. 28–30.

[2] See above, pp. 56–58.

the name of the bird, becomes also the name for the hoisting machine, the most notable thing about both cranes being their long legs. The word *horse*, first the name of the animal, may mean also a piece of gymnasium apparatus, or a rack for hanging objects on, as a clothes-horse. The noun *key* from its first literal sense passes to numerous metaphorical senses, as, for example, its use to designate a book which gives answers to problems contained in another book; or we may speak of an important fact as "the key to the mystery." Primarily the word *chest* meant only a box, usually a box in which valuables were kept; but about the sixteenth century it came to be used also of the framework of the breast which encloses the heart, a figurative use which is exemplified in various conscious metaphors before it settles down into the literal meaning. Thus we have the following couplet in Shakspere's *Richard II,* Act I, Sc. 1, ll. 180–181:

> "A jewel in a ten-times barr'd-up chest,
> Is a bold spirit in a loyal breast."

Shakspere's contemporary, Sir John Davies, elaborates the same figure in the following stanza of his *Nosce Te Ipsum* with a fullness of detail which to a modern writer would be quite impossible now that the word *chest* has acquired literal and commonplace meanings:

> "O ignorant poor man! what dost thou beare
> Lockt up within the casket of thy brest?
> What iewels, and what riches hast thou there!
> What heavenly treasure in so weake a chest!"[1]

This feeling for the figurative use of *chest* may be further illustrated by the use of *box* in a similar way in the following passage from a seventeenth century writer: "I had yours lately by a safe hand, wherein I find you open to me all the Boxes of your Breast."[2]

[1] Davies, *Nosce Te Ipsum*, ed. Grosart, I, 114.
[2] Howell, *Familiar Letters*, ed. Jacobs, II, 378.

The parts of the human body are used very frequently with this transferred metaphorical value. Thus *head* may be used of the head of a nail, screw, or pin; of a head of lettuce; the front of an engine, as illustrated by "head-light"; and of many other similar objects; we also speak of the *leg* of a table or chair; the *foot* of a mountain; the *hand* of a watch or dial; the *eye* of a needle; the *nose* of a boat or ship; the *ear*, meaning handle, of a bottle, as in Cowper's *John Gilpin's Ride*, "Each bottle had a curling ear";[1] the *mouth* of a vessel or a river; the *beard* of a head of wheat or barley; the *teeth* of a saw; the *tongue* of a wagon; the *cheek* of a peach; the *arm* of a lever; the *bosom* of the earth; and there are many other instances, literally too numerous to mention.

(2) A concrete word may be changed from a physical sense to an intellectual or spiritual sense, as the adjective *burning* in "a burning desire," or *cold* in "a cold disposition," or *heavy* in "a heavy heart." The word *sad* had originally a physical meaning which persists, however, only in a few uses, like *sad-iron*, or as descriptive of heavy, soggy cake or bread. The adjective *sullen* has a somewhat similar history. It is derived ultimately from a Late Latin *solanus*, through the French, meaning "single, solitary." Thus Chaucer in his *Parlement of Foules* (l. 607) has the cuckoo say that if he can have his mate, the other birds may be sullen, or in Chaucer's spelling, soleyn, all their lives. This meaning persists fairly late, as may be seen from its use by Defoe (*Essay on Projects*, London, 1697, p 244): "But there is a direct Signification of Words, or a Cadence in Expression, which we call speaking Sense; this, like Truth, is *sullen* and the same, ever was and will be so, in what manner and in what Language soever 't is express'd." From single or soli-

[1] The word *ear*, in "ear of corn," is etymologically a different word, though now it is usually thought of as being a metaphorical use of the name of part of the body.

tary in the physical sense to the meaning aloof, sullen, in the spiritual or mental sense, is an easy transition.

(3) An intellectual word, on the other hand, may be used to designate a concrete person or object, as the word *wit*, in its intellectual sense meaning brilliance or ingenuity, in its concrete sense, as in the sentence "He is a great wit," meaning "a witty man." So *trust* in its intellectual sense is the name of an abstract quality, in its concrete sense it is the name of a group of men organized for certain purposes of business. Dialectally and colloquially, also, the abstract noun *misery* takes a concrete sense in sentences like "I've got a misery in my back"; compare also the use of *pain* as both abstract and concrete.

(4) Words appropriate to living beings may be transferred to inanimate objects. This process is frequently exemplified in poetry, where Ruskin has given it the name "pathetic fallacy." Thus Coleridge in *The Ancient Mariner* speaks of "the silly buckets," and Ruskin quotes such lines as "the cruel, crawling foam." [1] In ordinary colloquial use we have such phrases as "a dumb waiter," "a blind alley," "a crying need," etc. These are, or were originally, very strong metaphors and had the effect of personifying the objects to which they applied. They differ thus from the examples given under (1), such as the "leg of a chair," which is a perfectly matter-of-fact use of the word "leg."

(5) Words appropriate to one group of sense perceptions may be extended in their use by applying them to a different group, as when we speak of "a loud color," or "a sweet voice," "a dull sound," "a bright melody," etc.

[1] *Modern Painters*, Part IV, Chapter XII: "The foam is not cruel, neither does it crawl. The state of mind which attributes to it these characters of a living creature is one in which the reason is unhinged by grief. All violent feelings have the same effect. They produce in us a falseness in all our impressions of external things, which I would generally characterize as the 'Pathetic Fallacy.'"

8. **Differentiation by Functional Change.** One of the most interesting of the ways in which our vocabulary is given variety in use is by the passage of a word from one part of speech to another. Modern English is especially free in its use of this kind of differentiation, or specialization in words, as is shown by the following illustrations :[1]

(1) Adjectives become nouns, as in "the *good*, the *true*, and the *beautiful*"; "so much to the *good*"; "he has gone to the *bad*"; "he was ordered to the *front*"; "a *nickel*" = a five-cent piece; "a *pug*" = a pug dog; "the *young* of the eagle"; "the village *green*"; "a *square*" = a city block or square; "the *blues*"; "the pine *barrens*." This happens frequently in the case of proper adjectives, which lose their adjective value and become pure nouns, as *china*, from "China ware"; *calico*, from "Calicut cloth"; *bantam*, from "Bantam fowl."

(2) Nouns become adjectives, as in "a *New York* bank," "a *beefsteak* dinner," "a *dinner* card," "an *insurance* agent," "a *railway* official," "a *city* superintendent," "a *water* famine," etc.[2]

[1] Note how closely some words in Modern English, because of the various functional and figurative values which they may have, have come to approach the use of root-words in their ability to express a large group of related ideas. The word *head*, for example, may be a noun naming the part of the body; or the beginning of anything, as the head of a list, or page, or river or lake; or anything shaped somewhat like a head, as a head of cabbage, the head of a drum, the head of a nail or screw, etc. It may also be a verb, as in the sentence, "He heads the list," or "This lettuce heads early," i. e., makes a head. It may further be an adjective, as in "the head waters of the rivers," "the head clerk," "the head (cf. *chief*, from Latin *caput* through French *chef*) difficulty," etc.

[2] Some of these examples are essentially the same as the noun + noun compounds described above, differing only in that they are not written with hyphens. This method of differentiation is sometimes adversely criticised by grammarians and rhetoricians. It is, however, one of the most active methods of word change in present English, and the language would be much the poorer without this capability.

(3) Verbs become nouns, as in "a *brand* of goods," from the act of branding; "a *drive* of logs"; "the *help*" (i. e., the servants); "to give one a *lift*"; "a *find*"; "the dominant, primordial beast who had made his *kill* and found it good" (London, *Call of the Wild*); "Yield them *permit* to eat the sacred corn" (Aldrich, *Judith and Holofernes*); "a *combine*."

(4) Nouns become verbs, as in "to *house* the poor"; "to *carpet* a room"; "to *stone* a cat"; "to *bridge* a stream"; "to *board* a ship or train."

(5) Pronouns become nouns, as in "In the south only the *shes* with young and the fat he-bears retire for the sleep." (Roosevelt, *Hunting the Grisly*, p. 54.)

(6) Adverbs become verbs, as in "He *downed* his opponent the first round"; "Then he *offs* with his hat."

(7) Adverbs become nouns, as "*Now* is the accepted time"; "A noise was heard from *without*"; "I have just come from *there*."

(8) Adjectives become verbs, as in "The house *fronts* the street"; "Acid *sours* milk"; "Who will *brown* the toast?" "He *backed* the horse," etc.

(9) Prepositions become adjectives, as in "a *through* train"; "the *under* dog"; "*by* product"; in *bystander*, *byword*, etc., the preposition has been united to another word forming a close compound. The word *by-laws* is sometimes mistakenly supposed to be made up of the preposition *by* + the noun *law*, the compound having the sense of secondary or minor law. In origin, however, the element *by* in *by-law* is a Scandinavian word meaning "town," as it appears in place-names like *Whitby*, *Derby*, etc. The original meaning of the compound was therefore "town law." and this, in distinction to the general or national law, readily passed over into the derived modern meaning of secondary or minor law.

(10) Adverbs become adjectives, as in "the *off* horse"; "the *then* Bishop of Lichfield" (Newman, *Apologia*, p. 31).

"waiting for the *down* mail to Falmouth" (ibid., p. 32); "*outer* darkness"; "over rocks and *down* timber" (Roosevelt, *Hunting the Grisly*, p. 59).

(11) Verbs usually intransitive become transitive, as in "Cornell will *row* Wisconsin"; "to *walk* a horse"; "to *walk* the streets"; "to *jump* a fence"; cf. Whitman, in *Captain, my Captain:* "I *walk* the deck my captain *lies*."

(12) Verbs usually transitive become intransitive, as in "I don't *sing*, but I 'm fond of *playing*."

To some slight extent we also have differentiation by accent in Modern English. Thus we have the verbs *perfume'*, *compound'*, *contract'*, *present'*, etc., with the corresponding nouns *per'fume, com'pound, con'tract*, *pres'ent*, etc. Sometimes the difference in accent is accompanied by other slight differences of form and pronunciation, as in the adjectives *hu'man, humane'*, *an'tic, antique'*.

9. **Slang.** Any consideration of creation in language, or the differentiation in the meanings of words, must necessarily take up the question of slang. There is an initial difficulty, however, in that it is extremely hard to give a satisfactory definition of slang. The matter is very largely one of individual feeling. What is regarded as slang by one person is regarded as perfectly correct, colorless English by another. Thus the phrases "on the wrong tack," "to go back on one," or "to give oneself away," etc., may be regarded by one speaker merely as good vigorous colloquial English, whereas another over-cautious speaker may reject them as utterly reprehensible and "slangy." So also the phrase "out of sight" acquired a certain slang use which for a time was widely current; but certainly no one would think that Lowell meant to use the phrase with this value in the following lines from the *Vision of Sir Launfal:*

> He sculptured every summer delight
> In his halls and chambers out of sight.

A similar illustration is to be found in the use of "fire" in the sense of discharge or expel, as in "to fire a person out of a room"; exactly the same occurs in Shakspere, without any of the connotation of slang, in the following lines, the thought of which is the presence of two spirits, one good and one evil, in man's heart:

> Yet this shall I ne'er know, but live in doubt,
> Till my bad angel fire my good one out.
>
> *Sonnets*, cxliv.

Indeed the feeling for slang is on the whole of rather modern origin. In Shakspere's day and earlier the language was free to be as expressive as it could and in any way in which it could. Slang can arise only when certain things are not permitted, for there is always the flavor of forbidden fruit in slang. In reading early authors, consequently, one is frequently struck by forms of expression which would have been slang if the conventions of the time had been more rigid. Thus Chaucer (*Parlement of Foules*, l. 595) says: *There been mo sterres, god wot, than a paire*, "There are more stars, God knows, than a pair," which is a close parallel to the recent slang expression, "There 's more than one pebble on the beach." In the *Digby Plays* (p. 14, l. 338) occurs the expression, *thou to make me a knight, that were on the newe*, which cannot fail to remind one of the modern "on the side." An Elizabethan critic, Richard Carew, wrote a little treatise on the excellency of the English tongue, about the year 1595, in which he illustrates the richness of the English language by showing in how many different ways we can get rid of a person; his list is as follows,

and it is interesting to see how many of his phrases would now fall under the general condemnation as slang: "neither cann any tongue (as I am perswaded) deliuer a matter with more varietye then ours, both plainely and by prouerbes and Metaphors; for example, when wee would be rid of one, wee vse to saye *Bee going, trudge, pack, be faring, hence, awaye, shifte*, and, by circumlocution, *rather your roome then your companye, Letts see your backe, com againe when I bid you, when you are called, sent for, intreated, willed, desiered, inuited, spare vs your place, another in your steede, a shipp of salte for you, saue your credite, you are next the doore, the doore is open for you, theres noe bodye holdes you, no bodie teares your sleeue*, etc." [1]

The term slang is sometimes used in a very wide sense to include all those characteristics of language that one disapproves of which do not come under the head of bad grammar or of vulgar and improper speech. Such a definition of slang, however, is decidedly too wide. For there is a certain group of words with very clearly defined characteristics which everybody feels as having something in common, a spirit or tone, to which we should limit the term slang. To fall in this group a word must possess certain elements of novelty and originality in its use, it must be of a somewhat quaint, picturesque, playful, or humorous color, and above all it must have patness, freshness, and timeliness in its applications. Slang words, however, are always more readily felt than described, and the best way to consider them is, perhaps, to take up the various types of words which fall in the class.

[1] In Gregory Smith, *Elizabethan Critical Essays*, II, 292.

(1) Counter words as slang. By counter words are meant such words as are chosen by common social understanding to do service for a great variety of uses. These words thus become a sort of blank counter for certain ideas to which we do not then give exact and definite expression. The invention of such words is a social convenience; it is not always necessary to state precisely what we mean, and it is therefore often convenient to have an accepted, conventional word to take the place of a specific word. Such counter words in present use are words like *nice* (for the precise meaning of which see the dictionary), in all sorts of phrases, as in "a nice time," "a nice walk," "a nice place," "a nice day," "a nice dinner," etc.; or its contrasting counter word, *awful*, as in "an awful job," "awful weather," "an awful bore," etc. Counter words because of their constant use tend to become weakened in value, to become almost colorless in meaning, with the result that they indicate merely a general attitude of mind of the speaker as favorable or unfavorable to the objects spoken of. Owing to this tendency, it frequently becomes necessary to replace old worn-out counter words by new ones. At the time of the present writing, for example, the adjective *fierce* is much used as a general slang term of disapproval; anything which is unpleasant is *fierce*. Whether or not *fierce* will become a generally used counter word, like *nice* and *awful*, and will thus weaken to a vague general meaning, time only will tell. The likelihood is, however, that in a short time it will altogether disappear. Looking back over only a few years, one can recall numbers of counter words, or phrases, which sprang up and were used for a time and then

dropped completely out. If we examine the literature of earlier periods we shall find that each had its own counter words. Thus in the eighteenth century the counter word used in commendatory senses equivalent to our *nice* was the word *elegant*. It was used in all the ways in which *nice* is now used, and in certain directions its use was more extensive, as in such phrases as "the elegant author of the Essay on Man," "An elegant essay, novel, or poem," etc. It has persisted to the present time, mainly in the phrase, "An elegant time." In the Elizabethan period the favorite counter word, equivalent to *nice* and *elegant*, was *fair*. Such a play as Shakspere's *Love's Labour's Lost*, which is very contemporary in its diction, is full of illustrations; note especially the beginning of scene one in act four. The variety of its use may perhaps be better illustrated by the following passage in prose, taken from one of the works of a contemporary of Shakspere:

"There is now building in Amiens a very *faire* Nunnery for the same Carmelite Nunnes, which do now live in another Nunnery that is more obscure and less delightful for their contemplation. They remove shortly from that wherein they now live to that which is now building, because it is a more private and solitary place for their meditation, and the service of God. Unto this new Nunnery there belongeth a *faire* garden full of fine spacious walkes, beset with sundry pleasant trees. I was at the monastery of the Capucins, in whose church there were two *faire* altars, with many pictures of Christ and Saint Francis. They have a *faire* garden belonging to their Monastery, neare to which they have a Cloister, wherein are hanged many religious pictures, emblemes, and posies tending to mortification.

"At Saint Germans Church there is a wondrous rich altar

very abundantly decked with precious ornaments, especially a gilt Tabernacle. This is the *fairest* Altar by many degrees that I saw in all the City.

"The towne house which is very neare to the gate as you come into the city from Pickeney is very *fair*, being three stories high, and built with bricke, having goodly armes in it.

"The *fairest* cage of birds that I saw in al France, was at the signe of the Ave Maria in Amiens, the workmanship whereof was very curious with gilt wyres.

"A little on this side Paris, even at the towns end, there is the *fayrest* Gallowes that ever I saw, built upon a little hillock called Mount Falcon, which consisteth of fourteene *fair* pillars of free-stone: this gallowes was made in the time of the Guisian Massacre, to hang the Admiral of France Chatillion, who was a Protestant, Anno Dom. 1572." [1]

The question of the attitude which we shall assume towards the use of these counter words is of considerable interest and importance. It is sometimes said that we should avoid using such words of generalized meaning, that to do so impoverishes thought, and that we should always strive to use definite and specific words. But suppose the idea we want to express is not definite and specific, but vague and general? Suppose we meet a person casually and in friendly salutation remark that it is a nice day? Does not the word *nice* express there all that it is necessary to express? It shows that we have in general kindly feelings towards the weather and nobody cares particularly whether it is because of the warmness or coolness or wetness or dryness of it. In short, there are many occasions when we need to express indefi-

[1] Coryat's *Crudities*, reprinted from the edition of 1611, London, 1776. Vol. I, p. 19. The concluding paragraph is on p. 26.

nite and conventional ideas or feelings, and for this purpose we need indefinite and conventional words. There is, therefore, a proper time for the use of counter words, and then no other words would take their place. When the mind has occasion to use definite and specific words to express its thought it will look about and find these words; but the person who never uses any other than colorless, indefinite, and general words does so because the character of his thought is always colorless, commonplace, and vague. The corrective, therefore, of a too vague and general use of words is not merely to discontinue the use of the offending words, but to have something really definite to say.

(2) Slang as picturesque metaphor. This is probably the source of the largest number of slang words. They originate from a striking and novel metaphor which is almost always of a ridiculous, or at least humorous, color, because of a grotesque contrast between the literal and the figurative meanings of the word. Thus recent slang has taken the two nouns *bird* and *peach*, and has used them in all manner of commendatory senses; anything admirable or excellent may be spoken of as a *bird* or a *peach*. A person who expresses an opinion differing from one's own may be said "to be off his base," a metaphor apparently taken from base-ball. Or one whose mental operations are peculiar is described as "cracked," or "off his nut," both being derived from the metaphor of the head as a nut. The word *kick* is used in a slang, metaphorical sense "to oppose" or "to object." Originally used of buckling a saddle to a horse's back, the word *cinch*, in its slang use, now means to have a tight hold on anything, a sure thing, or an easy time, etc. The

metaphorical use of *fire*, probably from the figure of firing a gun, has already been mentioned; with it may be compared the similar use of *bounce*. The word *pull* passes in slang from its literal meaning to the metaphorical one of influence. In the same general group belong the words *graft*, *grafter*, which literally apply to the grafting of something extraneous to an original stock, as a twig on a branch, but metaphorically to the person who gets more than the legitimate income from his position. In a recent trial a motion to dismiss a slander suit was made on the ground that *grafter* was not a recognized word of the language. The judge wisely overruled the motion, and if he had not, the report goes on to say, "what legal redress would a man have when called a *muckraker* or a *mollycoddle*, both of which words are of much later vogue than *grafter?*" Illustrations of these metaphorical slang creations might be increased indefinitely. Each day in each community the number is added to. Most of such inventions have a very short existence; they take the popular fancy for a time, are excessively used, and then are crowded out by some new novelty. It should be observed, however, that this method of word creation by the invention of slang through metaphor is a natural linguistic process that has gone on for a long time, that to it the language owes much of its effectiveness and expressiveness, and that as a natural helpful linguistic process, our attitude towards it should not be too scornful. It needs only the acceptance of usage, for example, to make a good, expressive word of the slang word *kick*. In many instances words which were originally striking and picturesque metaphors have been accepted into conven

tional good use, as, for example, the word *sulky*, the name of a vehicle, first used because the vehicle being one-seated suggested the idea of selfishness and sulkiness. Numerous other examples have already been given under the discussion of differentiation by metaphor. The main reason why slang words do not now make their way into good use so freely as they did formerly, is that our standards and conventions in language have become more fixed. We are inclined to estimate language not immediately from the point of view of its power and value in the expression of thought and feeling, as was the tendency in Shakspere's day, but from the point of view of its agreement or disagreement with the preceding traditional use of the language. In what we call the lower forms of society, however, for example, among street Arabs and gamins, such a thing as the idea of slang does not exist. To another person their speech may be very slangy, because it is contrary to the customs and traditions which he has accepted as established and correct. But to the boy or man on the street all language is used merely for the sake of expression; to him that is its only purpose and justification, and he consequently feels free to create and change as much as he pleases. In other words, language is more likely to be a natural, growing, developing medium of communication among the untrained and unconventional than it is among the educated and conventional.

(3) Slang as cant phraseology. Every profession, or every group of people engaged in the same activity, tends to develop a vocabulary peculiar to itself, which we may call a class, or technical, or cant vocabulary. It is the

professional jargon of the respective groups of people. Thus the stock markets have invented a great number of professional words and phrases, such as *bull* and *bear ;* one is *long* on a certain stock when one is well provided with it, and *short* on it when one is inadequately provided ; a *deal* by which one person is shut out of a certain combination is known as a *freeze out ;* and so with many other words and phrases. Another group of persons which has developed a very rich cant slang vocabulary is the college and school group. The college boy *flunks* on examination, or *makes a fluke* of a recitation ; when he or his professor talks vaguely and beside the point, he *drools*, and so on indefinitely. Still other groups which make frequent use of cant terms are sportsmen of various kinds, the race-track, the kennel, the base-ball and foot-ball field, for example, each having its own special vocabulary ; and perhaps more than any other, the floating population of crooks and tramps. In this last group we need only mention such words as *crook*, *hobo*, *bum*, *booze*, etc., to suggest hosts of others. It should be noted that the cant vocabulary of one group is largely unintelligible to another group, the cant terms of the stock-markets being understood only by those in that business. It is obvious that the cant terms of a profession or of any group of people may cease to have slang value to the people who habitually use them, becoming to them merely the literal names for the activities of their profession and thus a part of their technical vocabulary. Words of this sort, however, seldom pass beyond the limits of their group into general use.

(4) Slang as picturesque sound. Often a slang word

does not apparently have any clear logical meaning, but comes into use merely because its sound is amusing or suggestive of some idea. Such a word is the now current *skidoo*, the present-day equivalent of the older *skedaddle*. Similar words are *mosey*, meaning to walk slowly and aimlessly; *snide* meaning cunning, tricky; *biff*, a blow; *plunk*, first a silver dollar, perhaps from the sound of it as it falls on a counter, then merely dollar; *flub* or *chump*, a more or less heavy, stupid person. In this class might be included language abbreviations, like *prof*, *doc*, *exam*, for professor, doctor, examination; *phiz* for physiognomy; and such language mutilations as *bizny* for business, *picture-askew* for picturesque, etc. Many slang words seem to be suggested by the high-sounding Latin vocabulary, such as *bogus; spondulix; slantendicularly; catawamus; bamboozle; cahoots; didoes; hocus pocus*, etc. Occasionally an actual Latin phrase, for example, *non compos mentis*, or simply *non compos*, is used as a slang expression by persons who know nothing of the origin of the phrase.

10. **Attitude towards Slang.** Since slang is not an abnormal or diseased growth in language, but arises in the language just as other words arise, there is no reason why such words in themselves should be condemned. Intrinsically they are not bad, but rather good, in so far as they show activity of mind and a desire to be vigorously expressive on the part of the speaker. But since from the circumstances of their development and use, slang words carry with them a certain individual color, flavor, or tone, whatever we may wish to call it, that gives them a marked distinctive value, the use of them should be determined by their appropriateness to the mood or

thought which we wish to express. Perhaps we should make a distinction between speaking and writing, allowing ourselves somewhat more liberty in speaking than in writing, in neither instance, however, completely suppressing the creative instinct in language. In answer to the frequent charge that "Slang is vulgar," we may say that slang in itself is no more vulgar than other words of the language, that there is nothing inherently vulgar in a slang word. A word is vulgar only when the idea which it expresses or connotes is vulgar, and this is true of other words as well as slang. But that slang words often carry with them by suggestion or connotation ideas or shades of thought that may fairly be called vulgar, or at least undignified, cannot be denied. The reason for this is that the slang words often come from the language of a grade or of classes of society the activities of which as a whole are looked upon as vulgar or undignified. On the other hand certain slang words may carry with them exactly the opposite connotation when they are the cant terms (such words as *smart set*, *swagger*, *swell*, etc.) current among people who are regarded, or who regard themselves, as leaders in matters of fashion and conventional manners. A second statement that "Slang limits vocabulary" might be accepted if it were true that vocabulary limits thought. But the true statement is that vocabulary is the expression, the measure of thought, and its extent and character is determined by the extent and variety of thought itself. To say that slang limits vocabulary is literally to say that vocabulary limits vocabulary. That loose and lazy thinkers are inclined to use one word to express many shades of thought is true not only in the use of slang words, but of many

other words of the language.[1] It may be said in general, however, that the continual use of slang, since much of its effect depends upon a kind of temporary conventional smartness, is a fair indication of a cheap and shallow mind. The slang habit is vicious because it cheapens by constant use an activity of language which is needed, but which, to produce its proper effect, must be employed only when it is needed. Slang is nearly always conscious in its origin and in its use. It is almost always more expressive than the situation demands. It is indeed a kind of hyperesthesia in the use of language. It differs thus from idiom, which is normally expressive. "To laugh in your sleeve" is idiom because it arises out of a natural situation; it is a metaphor derived from the picture of one raising his sleeve to his face to hide a smile, a metaphor which arose naturally enough in early periods when sleeves were long and flowing; but "to talk through your hat" is slang, not only because it is new, but also because it is a grotesque exaggeration of the truth.

11. **Word Borrowing in English.** The background and the basis of the English vocabulary is of course Teutonic or Germanic, by inheritance, just as its inflectional and general grammatical systems are. From the earliest historical times, however, this Teutonic base has been enriched by the borrowing of words from other languages, sometimes more rapidly and abundantly than at others, dependent upon the extent to which the English,

[1] Cf. the various loose meanings of the word *fix*, such as to arrange, to mend, to settle or plant firmly, and even to punish, as in "I'll fix him." The corrective of this fault is the determination and definition of the thought so clearly that more discriminating terms must be used to express it adequately.

or their Anglian, Jutish, and Saxon ancestors, were brought into contact with other peoples.

The first historic borrowings which we can clearly trace are borrowings from Latin while the Angles, Jutes, and Saxons were still resident on the Continent. Words of this sort are the common possession of a number of Germanic languages. Examples are *wine*, from Old English *wīn*, Latin *vinum ; monger* (as in fishmonger), Old English *mangere*, Latin *mango*, to buy or sell ; *pound*, Old English *pund*, Latin *pondo ; wall*, Old English *weall*, Latin *vallum ; street*, Old English *strǽt*, Latin *strata* (*via*) ; and a few others. Not many words were taken over from the Latin at this early period, those that were borrowed being chiefly commercial terms, like *monger*, *pound*, etc., and military terms like *wall* and *street*, the Roman streets or roads being built primarily to facilitate the passage of troops from one part of the Empire to another.

12. **Celtic Borrowings**. After the migration to England of those Continental tribes which later constituted the Anglo-Saxon people, the language and the people with which they were first brought into contact and from which we should expect them to borrow words were the native Celtic language and the Celts. The relation of the Celts to the Anglo-Saxons was that of a subdued race to its conquerors,[1] and we should hardly expect, therefore, that the Anglo-Saxons would borrow very abundantly from the Celts. The tendency would be in the other direction, for the Celts, the weaker and less

[1] Cf. Old English *wielen*, "slave-woman," the feminine form of the name *Wealh*, "Welsh," by which the Anglo-Saxons named their Celtic servants.

influential people, to give up their language for Old English. The Anglo-Saxon would feel neither necessity nor inclination to borrow from the Celt. And in fact, so far as we are able to judge now from the Celtic words used in the literature of the earlier periods that has been preserved, the influence of the Celts upon the Anglo-Saxons was very slight. Scholars have been able to find less than a score of words in the English language before the eleventh century which can be said with any degree of probability to have been derived from the Celtic. Some of these, for example the word *drȳ* in Old English, meaning " magician," and cognate with the first syllable of *druid*, have disappeared from later English. Others, for example *mattock*, which it was formerly supposed were borrowed from Celtic, have been shown to be Celtic borrowings from English. The words which we can be reasonably certain were borrowed by Old English from Celtic and which are still found in Modern English, are very few in number; among them the following are the most probable: *brock* (badger); *down* (a hill); *slough*. To find any extensive influence of Celtic on English we must turn to the proper names of the language, such as the names of rivers, mountains, districts, etc., many of which naturally retained their original Celtic names. This is especially true of regions like Devonshire and Cornwall which for a long time resisted the attacks of the Anglo-Saxons and thus remained largely Celtic after the rest of southern and eastern England had been completely Teutonized.[1]

[1] For the etymologies of the place names of England, see Taylor, *Words and Places*, London, 1893, and *Names and their Histories*, London, 1896.

It should be remembered, also, in estimating the Celtic element in English, that the small number of early Celtic words in English has been increased, tho not to any considerable extent, by later borrowings from Irish, as, for example, *brogue*, *galore*, *shamrock*, *shillelagh* *spalpeen*, *Tory*, *usquebaugh*, etc.; from Scotch, in such words as *clan*, *glen*, *kail*, *pibroch*, *plaid*, *slogan*, *whiskey*, etc.; and from Welsh in *coracle*, *cromlech*, *flannel*, and a few others. But the entire number of Celtic words in English is surprisingly small.

13. **Latin Borrowings of the First Period.** After the settlement of the Anglo-Saxons in England and the establishment of their supremacy over the Celts, the first great event, important for the development of their civilization and language, was the introduction of Christianity and of Roman civilization, by means of the Augustinian mission in the last decade of the sixth century. The Anglo-Saxons were thus brought into direct contact with a civilization that was higher than their own, and by the same principle which accounts for the slight influence of Celtic upon Old English, we should expect a strong influence of Latin upon Old English. There is abundant evidence to show that the influence of Latin was profound. The Roman missionaries were not only preachers, they were also teachers. One of their first projects was the establishment of schools in which Anglo-Saxon children were to be educated for the priesthood. The teachers in these schools were at first naturally Romans, or at least not Anglo-Saxons; but in the course of comparatively a short time persons of pure Anglo-Saxon birth attained distinction as teachers and scholars. Of these we may

mention two, Aldhelm, born about 650 and dying in 709, a pupil of the school at Canterbury, who was the author of a number of Latin treatises which are still extant; and Alcuin, who lived from about 735 to 804, a pupil of the cathedral school established at York. Alcuin has been described as "the most learned man of his age," [1] and when Charlemagne wished to establish schools at his own court, he invited Alcuin to become master of them, a post which he held from 782 to 790. Latin learning was also cultivated by other Anglo-Saxons, as, for example, the Venerable Bede (c. 673–735), the author of the *Ecclesiastical History of the English People* (*Historia Ecclesiastica gentis Anglorum*); King Alfred (849–901), who translated many Latin works into English; and Ælfric (c. 955–1020), author of many treatises both in Latin and in English. A natural result of this familiarity with Latin was the incorporation of a considerable number of Latin words into the English vocabulary. It has been estimated that before the year 1050 nearly four hundred words are found in extant Old English literature.[2] As we should expect, many of these words are of ecclesiastical character, the new religion and its organization naturally bringing with it many of its own words. Words of this sort which appear in the Old English period and have persisted in use to-day, are *bishop*, Lat. *episcopus; apostle*, Lat. *apostolus; alms*, Lat. *eleemosyna* (which in turn is of Greek origin); *creed*, Lat. *credo; candel*, Lat. *candela; organ*, Lat. *organum; priest*, Lat. *presbyter*.

Another large group is made up of words which

[1] See Sandys, *History of Classical Scholarship*, Vol. I, p. 460.

[2] See Toller, *Outlines of the History of the English Language*, p. 79 ff.

might be called scientific or learned words, as, for example, names of plants, as *cedar*, Lat. *cedrus ; box* (box-tree), Lat. *buxus ;* or of mathematical divisions of space and time, as *calends*, Lat. *calendae ; mile*, Lat. *milia ; noon*, Lat. *nona* (literally the ninth hour of the day) ; *meter*, Lat. *metrum*. The Modern English *tile*, which appears as Old English *tigele*, from Latin *tegula*, came into use in English when the object itself was introduced by the Latins.

The number of words of familiar daily life which passed from the Latin into Old English was relatively small. Examples are such words as *butter*, Lat. *butyrum ; cheese*, Lat. *caseus ; kitchen*, Lat. *coquina ; mill*, Lat. *molina ; cup*, Lat. *cuppa ; kettle*, Lat. *catillus*. A number of these words were plainly taken over because of the superiority of the monastery cooks and cooking over the native, just as to-day English has a kind of kitchen-French which has come into the language in a similar way.

On the whole, however, the influence of Latin upon English in this period was chiefly upon the learned language. But even here the influence was by no means revolutionary. A good many of the approximately four hundred words occurring in texts before 1050 are used merely as glosses, or are single occurrences obviously due to the immediate need of a translator to find a word to express some object or idea in his original. Old English, in the main, was very conservative in the matter of borrowing words. Even when it came to the expression of the abstract ideas of Christianity or of philosophy, Anglo-Saxon authors endeavored to get along with their own native stock of words and usually

succeeded remarkably well. For example, in King Alfred's translation of a philosophical work by the Latin writer Boethius, entitled *De Consolatione Philosophiae*, in a typical passage of about 660 words discussing the abstract question of the nature of God, only one Latin word, *englas*, Lat. *angeli*, "angels," occurs. There are frequent words, however, of abstract meaning, such as we usually express now by means of words of Latin origin. Examples are *mildheort*, literally "mild-heart," where we should now probably say *merciful* or *gracious*, both Latin words through the French; *rūmmōd*, literally *room-mood*, our modern *magnanimous*; *gāstlīce*, literally *ghost-like*, that is, *spiritual*; *tō-scēad*, an idea which we should now express by *difference* or *discrimination*; *hwīlwendlīc*, literally *while* (i. e., time), *wend* (turn), and the adjective suffix *līc*, the whole meaning *temporal*. And so with many other words it could be shown that where Modern English uses a word of Latin origin, Old English uses its own native words. In this respect Old English consequently resembles modern German more nearly than it does Modern English, the present tendency in English being to express new ideas, especially of a somewhat abstract character, by means of words of Latin origin, whereas modern German generally uses native words for this purpose.

14. **Borrowings from Scandinavian.** After their settlement in England the Anglo-Saxons came into renewed contact with the Scandinavians of the Continent, the Danes, Northmen or Norse, and Swedes, at the beginning of the Scandinavian invasions towards the close of the eighth century. These invasions, which at first were merely predatory, soon became wars of actual

conquest and settlement. By the heroic efforts of Alfred and his successors the Danes were kept out of Wessex for a time, but the other parts of England, especially the northern, soon succumbed to them, and with the conquest of Cnut, in 1016, the whole of England passed under Danish control, and a Danish king ruled at the same time both Denmark and England. The Danish conquerors of England readily amalgamated with the native Anglo-Saxon population. In this instance the Anglo-Saxon civilization, having passed through several centuries of peaceful development, was the higher one, and the Danes consequently tended to give up their language for the English language. The two languages, however, were much alike, and it is often difficult to tell when a word is pure Old English and when it is of Scandinavian origin. Many words, so far as their form goes, such common words, for example, as *man*, *wife*, *father*, *mother*, *folk*, *house*, etc., might as well be of Scandinavian as of Old English origin, because they are the same in both languages.[1] In some cases, however, ideas or objects of Scandinavian origin have left their impress plainly upon the names which were borrowed to designate them. A number of words were taken over by the Anglo-Saxons which have not persisted in the language, as, for example, words connected with the sea, *barda*, *cnear*, *scegð*, different kinds of ships; *lid*, "a fleet"; *ha*, "rowlock," etc. The Scandinavians appear also to have been active legal organizers, and a number of their law terms passed over to Old English, such as the word *law* itself; *by-law* (for the etymology of *by-*, see above, p. 198); *thrall*, "slave"; the verb *crave*; the second ele-

[1] See Jespersen, *Growth and Structure of the English Language*, p. 65

ment in *hus-band;* and others. Other Scandinavian words in English are the nouns *sky*, *skull*, *skin*, *skill*, *haven;* the adjectives *meek*, *low*, *scant*, *loose*, *odd*, *wrong*, *ill*, *ugly*, *rotten*, *happy*, *seemly;* the verbs *thrive*, *die*, *cast*, *hit*, *take*, *call*, *scare*, *scrape*, *bask*, *drown*, *ransack*, *gape;* probably the pronouns *they*, *their*, *them;* and the prepositions *fro* (to and fro) and *till*.

These words it will be observed are mostly ordinary words of common daily intercourse, and in this respect they differ widely from the Latin words that were taken over in the Old English period. From the nature of these Scandinavian borrowings we may infer that the Scandinavians and Anglo-Saxons lived together on a plane of equality; their relation to each other was not that of learned people to an ignorant, like the Latin to the Anglo-Saxon, or of an aristocratic ruling class to a conquered and ignoble group of subjects, like the Anglo-Saxons to the Celts. Anglo-Saxons and Scandinavians, moreover, lived together probably without much realization of a difference of nationality. This being the case, we might expect that the number of Anglo-Saxon borrowings from the Scandinavians would be much greater than it is. But the very similarity of the two languages and of the two peoples probably tended to prevent this. The Scandinavians apparently gave up their language without much struggle, and the Anglo-Saxons felt little need of borrowing words from their Teutonic kinsmen, having already an equivalent vocabulary in their own language.

15. **Borrowings from the French in the Middle English Period.** The words which English borrowed from other languages, Celtic, Latin, and Scandinavian, before the period of French influence, were comparatively

few in number. They were not of sufficient importance to change in any considerable degree the character of the language, or even to add much to its resources. English remained throughout a unilingual tongue, a language made up largely, or almost exclusively, of words of the same linguistic stock. As a result, however, of the French influence upon English, we have the introduction of a large number of words of French origin, so large a number that they modify the general character and tone of the language. So numerous and important are these French innovations that English changes from a unilingual to a bilingual tongue. The basis of the language remained English, as it always has through all stages of its history, but the accretions to this original English stock were of such a character as to make English sensitive to two language traditions, one Teutonic and the other Romance. This bilingual character of the language of the Middle English period has been transmitted to, and augmented by, later periods of English, so that to-day our language is made up of two historically clearly distinguishable, tho in practice closely interwoven strands, the Romance or Latin, and the English or Teutonic, strands.

The causes which brought about the introduction of French words into Middle English were partly political, but mainly social. The relations between England and France first became politically significant in the time of Edward the Confessor, who was king of England from 1043 to 1066. Edward had spent the early years of his life in Normandy in France, and there had acquired French sympathies and French tastes. When he became king, these sympathies and tastes were naturally

brought over by him to his English court. Moreover, Edward filled high political and ecclestiastical offices in England with Normans, in the face of the disapproval of the English, who finally rose up in rebellion in 1052 and drove these French favorites from the country. On the death of Edward, the English chose Harold, son of Earl Godwin, a very powerful English nobleman, as their king. But a cousin of Edward's, William, Duke of Normandy, made claim to the English throne on the basis of some promises alleged to have been given him by Edward, and in support of his claims he appeared on English soil with an army at his back, fought and defeated Harold at the famous battle of Hastings, on October 14, 1066, and thus a duke of Normandy became the king of England and the English people.

The effect of the Norman Conquest upon English institutions and life in general was profound and wide-reaching. In the first place, William the Conqueror was a strong and a wise executive. He became the real ruler of the country, he introduced a system of government, and saw to it that it was carried out. The persons to whom offices of trust were assigned were at first naturally his own Norman followers, and the language of the court and the higher official life was of course Norman French. But secondly, and, so far as the history of the language is concerned, more importantly, the Norman Conquest was significant because it changed England from an insular, self-dependent country to one with interests beyond itself. Through the Norman Conquest England became more fully acquainted with continental customs and habits of life, with French learning and with French literature, than it had been

before. What all this meant to England can hardly be overestimated; for the French of the eleventh and twelfth centuries were undoubtedly the most highly civilized nation of Europe, and of this civilization the English thus became partakers and sharers.

There is a frequent misapprehension which needs to be corrected, concerning the attitude which William the Conqueror assumed towards the English language. It is often assumed that William's attitude towards English was hostile, that he endeavored to crush it out and to substitute Norman French in its place, just as the Czar of Russia has recently attempted forcibly to compel the Finns to give up their native language and use Russian. The investigations of historians [1] have shown, however, that this was not William's purpose, either with respect to the English language or with respect to the political institutions of the English people. William was too wise a statesman not to make use of everything that would help him, and instead of being hostile to the English language and English customs, the indications are that he rather strove to use them in the effective organization of his kingdom. English was never, therefore, a forbidden language, tho naturally it was regarded for a long time as an ignoble language. The speech of the court and the higher official life was French, and Englishmen who sought favor at court of course learned French. There were thus two strata in the social body, each with its own language. English continued to be spoken uninterruptedly after the Con-

[1] See especially Freeman, *The Norman Conquest*; and the same author's essay, "The English People in their Three Homes," in *Some Impressions of the United States*.

quest, but it tended to become what we should now call the language of the ignorant and uncultivated; it persisted therefore as a popular dialect. French, on the other hand, became the accepted speech of the higher political and social life.

The number of Normans in England, as compared with the number of Englishmen, must always have been small. There were several reasons, however, why these Normans were not immediately absorbed by the more numerous English. In the first place, a higher civilization, tho confined to relatively few people, does not readily yield to lower influences; it is conservative and strives to be self-perpetuating. Second, French culture in England was continually refreshed by communication with the Continent. William was king of England, but also duke of Normandy, and many of his nobles who held possessions in England also had important relations with France. There was thus a continual passing back and forth of the official society between England and Normandy. In the meantime, however, those Frenchmen whose possessions and interests were all in England would be compelled in self-defense to learn English. Their workmen and their overseers, the people upon whom all the practical affairs of daily life depended, would be English; and as these English would have little opportunity to learn French, however great their inclination, the only thing for the landlords to do was to learn English. In the year 1204 an event happened which made communication between French and English in England more than ever frequent and necessary. This was the loss of the province of Normandy in the reign of King John, and the consequent loss of their

French possessions by the Norman nobles in England. From this time on English continued to gain as the national speech of the country. French remained as the cultivated speech of the higher social classes, but it came to be more and more felt as an accomplishment, an artificial, aristocratic class language, as distinguished from the general, national language of the people. As soon as this had come to pass, French as a spoken language in England was doomed. It might continue to be used as the language of polite conversation, to some extent as the language of literature and scholarship; but the language which does not send its roots down into the actual, every-day life of a people is condemned to sterility and death. French managed to maintain itself as a cultivated language far into the fourteenth century. Robert of Gloucester, writing about 1300, speaks of English as the language of "lowe men," but of French as the language of "heie men," by "high men" probably meaning men of high official rank. The *Cursor Mundi*, a long poem written in the north of England in the first quarter of the fourteenth century, defends English on patriotic grounds as the right language for Englishmen to use. Ralph Higden, in a Latin historical work called the *Polychronicon*, written near the middle of the century, says that children in school were compelled to leave their own language (showing that English was the *native* language of school children in his day) and to construe their lessons in French, a state of affairs which Higden regards with disfavor. Higden also says that gentlemen's children are taught French from the time that they are rocked in the cradle. The *Polychronicon* was translated into English by John Trevisa about

the year 1385, and in his translation Trevisa comments on Higden's statement, observing that in his day matters had changed somewhat, that children now studied their lessons in English; whereby, says Trevisa, they have this advantage, that they learn their lessons more quickly, but this disadvantage, that they know no more French than their left heels. In the meantime, in the year 1362, it had been ordered that pleadings in the law courts should be in English and not in French. By the end of the fourteenth century it was for once and all determined that English was to be the language of England. This final triumph of English is indicated most forcibly by the choice of English for literary purposes by Chaucer. Familiar as he was with French, Chaucer could have written in that language if he had so desired. But his observation had convinced him that French was a decaying and passing language in England, that the real, vital language of the country was English, and that any literature which should express English character and life must be written in the English language. Chaucer, therefore, while his example contributed to raise English in the respect of the people, did not by his single effort make English a language fit for literature. It had become so before Chaucer wrote, and what the poet did was to see his opportunity and use it. In his choice of English we have the final victory of English over French, the language of the people against the language of the higher life, of the court, of polite conversation, and of literature.

16. **Chronology of French Words in English.** When we come to consider the question of the times at which French words were taken over into English, we are

met by an interesting condition of affairs. As we have already seen, intimate relations between France and England began in the time of Edward the Confessor, continuing after the Conquest in a much more influential way to the time of the loss of Normandy in 1204. Even after the loss of Normandy, however, French continued to be used in England as a cultivated or polite language, and it was only at the beginning of the fourteenth century that English began to take the place of French, a tendency that became complete at the end of the century. Now it is remarkable that it is not until we come to English works written near the beginning of the fourteenth century that we find French words abundantly used. In the *Ormulum*, for example, a poem of about ten thousand long lines, written near the year 1200, only twenty-three words of French origin are used.[1] The *Brut* of Layamon, a poem of more than 56,000 short lines, written early in the thirteenth century, contains only 150 words of French origin.[2] The proportion varies slightly with different writers, other works contemporary with the *Ormulum* and the *Brut* showing some a larger and others a smaller relative number of French words. But the number for two centuries after the Conquest is never very large. Gradually, however, the use of French words in Middle English texts increases until it reaches its highest point between 1300 and 1400, or more exactly between 1350 and 1400, just the period in which French was losing ground as a national language and English was gaining ground. How is this to be explained? First of all, by the fact that when the higher classes, the

[1] A list of them is given by Kluge, *Englische Studien*, XXII, 179 ff.
[2] For a list of them, see Monroe, in *Modern Philology*, IV, 559 ff.

speech of which is naturally reflected in the literature of the period, took to speaking English, a language for which they had hitherto had more or less contempt, they naturally carried over into English many words from their French. Their English was a sort of Gallicized English, improved and polished, as they probably thought, by being interlarded with French words. The very tendency, therefore, which brought about the elevation of English resulted also in the introduction of numerous French words into English. Moreover, we need not suppose that the English themselves of the middle and lower classes were averse to borrowing French words in this period. French was recognized as a polite language, the language of culture, education, and travel, especially as the language of literature, and the occasional use of a French word conferred a touch of distinction upon the person who used it, just as to-day we have a sort of "society French," such words as *débutante*, *fiancée*, *foyer*, etc., and a sort of literary or esthetic French, words like *genre*, *dénouement*, *technique*, which persons of a somewhat unripe culture are fond of using.

The French which was thus cultivated at the end of the fourteenth century was no longer the old Anglo-Norman French of the original conquerors of England. That had in the course of time grown old-fashioned, tho from this Anglo-Norman French are of course derived most French words taken into English before 1350. The new and the fashionable French which was cultivated in the last half of the century was Central French, the dialect of Paris, the chief city of the French, and the dialect also in which the great body of French literature was written. We thus see that the Conquest itself and

its immediate political results were less influential in bringing about the introduction of French words into English than these later social causes. Indeed the influence of French upon the English vocabulary did not become pronounced until the Conquest had become practically forgotten and the racial distinction between Norman and English obliterated. The real explanation of the influence of French upon English is to be found where the influence of one language upon another is almost always to be found, in the give and take of the members of one social group upon another in the daily concerns of life.

17. **Kinds of Words Borrowed from French.** In general, words of all kinds, of all parts of speech, and from all walks of life were taken over into English, both from Anglo-Norman and from Central French, during the Middle English period. As a result of this borrowing, many English words were lost, French words like *mercy*, *charity*, *power*, *soldier*, *peace*, etc., taking the place of words which in the Old English period were drawn from the Teutonic stock. Or it often happened that an Old English word was preserved beside a French word of similar content, the Old English word, however, generally taking on a somewhat less dignified meaning than the French word, as, for example, French *chair* beside English *stool*; French *city* beside English *town*; French *labor* beside English *work*. Sir Walter Scott, in *Ivanhoe*, has called attention to pairs of words of this sort, such as French *beef*, *mutton*, *veal*, and *pork*, as compared with English *ox*, *sheep*, *calf*, and *swine*. He draws the inference that the ox and the other animals, so long as they were only objects of care and expense, were the

concern of the humble Saxons, but when they were dressed for the table and were ready to be enjoyed, then they passed into the possession of the Normans and took the French names, such as *beef*, etc. But there is no reason to suppose that the Saxons were so poverty-stricken and oppressed as not to be able to eat beef, mutton, or pork. The French names for the dressed meats were taken over because they were the polite names, and the Saxon when he had prepared his ox or his sheep for the table would himself be pleased to call it beef and mutton.

It would be difficult to go through the whole list of borrowed words and classify them exactly, so as to show just what ideas the language tended to express in French to the exclusion of English. As has already been stated, words of all kinds, the most simple as well as the most polite, were taken over, many of them maintaining only a temporary place in the language, but most of them persisting to the present day. These words we no longer feel as French in origin, and we use them in the same way as we use all other words of the language. They have become indeed an essential and inseparable part of the language, and any attempt to distinguish and to discriminate against words of French origin of this period is artificial and vain. As illustrations of short and simple words of French origin borrowed in the Middle English period, we may cite the following: *able*, *age*, *air*, *boil*, *card*, *chair*, *course*, *cry*, *debt*, *doubt*, *ease*, *engine*, *face*, *flower*, *fruit*, *hasty*, *hour*, *hulk*, *jolly*, *move*, *pass*, *oust*, *peck*, *river*, *soil*, *table*, *use*, etc. These simple words, the number of which could be increased indefinitely, are exactly on the same plane as the popular words

of Scandinavian origin cited above, and native words of Teutonic origin. They are completely amalgamated with the rest of the language, and have become thus to all intents and purposes identical with the popular native element. It is, therefore, not this part of the borrowed French strand in the English vocabulary that is most characteristic, so far at least as the style of English is concerned, of the influence of French upon English.

Besides these simple, commonplace words there is another large group of words of French origin which is specially significant of the relations which existed between French and English in this period, a group of words which clearly reflects the attitude of mind of the English of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries both towards their own and towards the French language. This difference is well illustrated by the lines in Chaucer's *Prolog* to *The Canterbury Tales*, in which he describes the virtues practised by the knight:

> he lovede chivalrye,
> Trouthe and honour, fredom and curteisye.[1]

Of these five nouns, the second and the fourth are English words, the first, the third, and the fifth are French. The English words, *truth* and *freedom*, are the names of two simple manly virtues, fundamental virtues in English character. The French words, *chivalry*, *honor*, and *courtesy*, name virtues of a different kind, courtly virtues, such as only those who are bred under certain conditions can know and practice. Honor and courtesy are determined by a code of conduct, a code which has been made elastic enough to permit a gambling debt being

[1] Ll. 45, 46.

called a "debt of honor." But truth and freedom are words which need no definition, because they have no doubtful meaning; they are not names for varying rules of conduct, but are names for permanent essential traits of character. It would be easy of course to make too much of this distinction, especially if we should attempt to show that French words, as is sometimes supposed, were generally borrowed to designate the shallower and more artificial ideas and sentiments. A truer statement would be that the French element often has the qualities of courtliness and grace, these words themselves, *courtliness* and *grace*, being French words, and the ideas for which they stand being largely French ideas. To the French the Middle English period was indebted for those standards of conduct which we usually group under the broad head of chivalry. Anglo-Saxon society may have been simple, earnest, and sincere, but it can hardly be said to have been light or graceful. The characteristics of charm and fancy, of polish and lightness, do not appear prominently in English literature, and probably did not exist in any considerable extent in English life, until after the period of French influence. It is the polite part of the English vocabulary, taken over from French at this time, that constitutes the striking difference between the language of the Middle English and the Old English period. This is illustrated by borrowed words which have to do with eating and table-manners, as, for example, the words *dine*, *dinner*, *supper*, *table* (for Old English *board*), *plate*, *napkin*, *fork*, *pasty*, *feast*, besides many names of edibles, of kitchen utensils, and of ways of preparing food, such as *roast*, *broil*, *boil*, and others. Costume and dress also changed and became

much more elaborate in the Middle English period, French words here again often taking the place of English ones. Examples are *coat*, *cloak*, *gown*, *boot*, *cap*, etc., also many names of cloths. Words of address were taken from the French, such as *sir*, *madam*, *master*, *mistress*, as well as many from the higher titles, like *prince*, *duke*, *duchess*, *marquis*, *baron*, *captain*, *sergeant*, *colonel*, *officer*, etc. Names of relationship, except the immediate relationships of the family, were expressed by French words, as *uncle*, *aunt*, *nephew*, *niece*, and *cousin;* but *father*, *brother*, *mother*, *sister* remained English. Accomplishments were usually French, both in word and fact. Four of the six talents mentioned by Chaucer in the following couplet descriptive of the gallant Squire in *The Canterbury Tales*, require French words to name them:

> He koude songes make and wel *endite*,
> *Juste* and eek *daunce* and weel *purtreye* and write.[1]

Many of the terms of sport, especially hawking and hunting, were taken from the French, and naturally also a great many words connected with the higher official life, as, for example, *crown*, *state*, *realm*, *royal*, *country*, *nation*, *power*, etc.; words connected with war and military affairs in general, as *arms*, *peace*, *battle*, *armor*, *banner*, *siege*, and a great many others; words pertaining to the law courts and the administration of justice, as, for example, *judge*, *justice*, *court*, *suit*, *plea*, *plead*, etc.; numerous words of ecclesiastical meaning, as *service*, *savior*, *relic*, *cloister*, *preach*, *prayer*, *clergy*, *clerk*, etc. But most important of all, perhaps, is the long list of words

[1] *Prolog*, ll. 95, 96. Endite = compose; juste = joust; eek = also.

of more or less abstract value denoting chivalric ideas or matters of general conduct. The words *honor* and *courtesy* have already been cited from Chaucer. To them should be added the word *villainy*, in Chaucer's well-known line descriptive of the Knight in the *Prolog* to *The Canterbury Tales:*

He nevere yet no vileynye ne sayde.

The word means in Chaucer not quite what it does in Modern English, in the earlier sense signifying any conduct not befitting a gentleman. Other words of this kind are *duty*, *fame*, *virtue*, *gentle*, *valor*, *chivalry*, *courage*, *liege*, *degree*, *rank*, *standard*, *noble*, *grace*, *favor*, *simple*, *pleasant*, *agreeable*, *amiable*, *manner*, *dignity*, *reverence*, *piteous*, *dainty*, *dalliaunce*, *familiar*, *vaunt*, *adventure*, *coward*, *charm*, *chastity*, *beauty*, *benign*, *oblige*, *fault*, *majesty*.

It is a significant fact that it would be extremely difficult to find an Old English equivalent to many of these words, the reason being that the exact shade of thought or feeling expressed by the French words was not a part of Anglo-Saxon experience. The life of the English people in the fourteenth century was much richer and more varied than it had been in the ninth or tenth centuries, and this growth in richness and variety, largely due as it was to their contact with French life and civilization, is also largely expressed in words of French origin.

18. **Renascence Borrowings in English**. The borrowing of French words, which has been described in the foregoing paragraphs, continued with but little diminution down through the fifteenth century. Towards the end of this century the tendency to import words of both

French and Latin origin was greatly strengthened by the general drift of the Renascence movement, that revival of learning and of interest in literature, both classical Latin and Greek and English vernacular, which, in its results upon language, was hardly less important than the period of French influence of which we have just spoken. The effect of the Renascence upon English is interesting and remarkable also because it was almost altogether the result of conscious effort. In preceding periods, any changes which affected the language took place largely without the conscious knowledge of the people who spoke the language. Words were borrowed from Scandinavian or French because it was convenient to have the Scandinavian or French words. But there was no avowed theory that it would be a good thing to add to the English vocabulary by borrowing from these languages, words being taken as the need for them arose in the social intercourse of daily life. In the Renascence period, however, there arose a perfectly conscious movement, on the part of scholars and authors, to extend the limits of the English vocabulary by direct borrowing from other languages. This was quite in keeping with the general spirit of the Renascence, one of its most characteristic aspects being a deep and general interest in questions of language. From their study of the classical authors, the Renascence scholars were naturally led to the consideration of the matter of style in literature, the ability of a language to express all the various shades of thought and feeling of the human mind and heart. The perfect models of style they thought were to be found in such writers as Cicero and Vergil, and tho a modern vernacular such as English could never hope to rival the

classical languages, these latter were nevertheless the ideals towards which the modern languages were to strive. A modern language could not be as good as Latin, but it ought to strive to be as like as possible to Latin. There arose thus the idea of "improving" the language, of "augmenting" it, of making it richer and fuller, and more capable of expressing what the Latin language could express so well. The desire to translate the monuments of classical literature into English also encouraged the belief that English should be improved, for obviously there could be no adequate translation into English until that language should be at least approximately as expressive as the language from which translation was to be made. The great endeavor, therefore, of the Renascence reformers was to enrich the vocabulary and to make the language more expressive. Their ideal was one of art, and they cultivated language mainly as a medium of artistic, literary expression.

As is true of all reform movements, the positive or radical party is sure to beget a reactionary or conservative party; and so in this movement also the enrichers or improvers had to contend with the opposition of the conservatives, who maintained that English should not borrow words from other languages, but should try to develop her own native resources. The conservatives contended that if English needed new words they should be taken from the earlier periods of her own language, rather than from foreign languages. Both of these bodies of theorists in the end helped towards the enrichment of the language, the one by external borrowing and imitation, the other by internal development.

The Renascence in England is characterized by two

events, both of them of the greatest importance in the history of the language. The first of these is the revival of learning, meaning thereby the study of Greek and Latin literature; the second is the introduction of printing. There was very little knowledge of Greek in England during the Old and the Middle English periods. The first Englishman to acquire proficiency in Greek in the Renascence period was William Tilly of Selling, near Canterbury, a Benedictine monk, who died in 1494. Others who succeeded him were his nephew, Thomas Linacre (1460–1524), William Grocyn (1446–1519), and William Latimer (d. 1545). Sir Thomas More (1480–1535) was also a student of Greek, and the great Dutch scholar, Erasmus, lived for several years in England, and gave instruction in Greek at the University of Cambridge. To these names may also be added that of William Lily, first High-Master of St. Paul's School in London, and author of the Latin grammar which Shakspere, as well as most of his contemporaries, used as a school-boy. The direct influence of Greek upon English in the Renascence period was, however, very slight as compared with the influence of Latin and French. The study and the knowledge of Greek were more important as expressive of a deep and enthusiastic interest in language merely as language, rather than as affecting directly the feeling for, and the use of, the English language.

The introduction of printing into England was due to William Caxton, an Englishman born in Kent about 1415. He lived on the Continent a number of years, and during his residence in the Low Countries learned the printer's trade. On his return to England he set up

a press of his own, and on November 18, 1477, the first dated book printed in England issued from his press. His work was very favorably received by the nobility in England, and thereafter Caxton's press was kept busy. To find material for publication, he himself became a translator. His first translation was a summary of the stories centering about the Trojan war, called *Recuyell of the Historyes of Troy;* other translations which he made were of *Reynard the Fox;* Jacobus a Voragine's *Golden Legend;* a modernization of Trevisa's English version of Higden's *Polychronicon;* a form of the story of the *Æneid* called *Eneydos;* and many others.

As author and translator Caxton was deeply impressed by the beauty and expressiveness of the Latin and the French languages, and was desirous of making English the equal of these languages. To attain this end he treated English with a freedom not always approved by his readers, who were sometimes puzzled by the strange words with which he confronted them. Thus in the preface to his *Eneydos*, which was published in 1490, he says he was attracted to the French book "by cause of the fayr and honest termes and wordes in frenshe"; and having decided to translate it into English, he "wrote a leef or tweyne" as sample. Then he adds: "and whan I sawe the fayr and straunge termes therin/ I doubted that it sholde not please some gentylmen whiche late blamed me, sayeng that in my translacyons I had ouer curyous termes whiche coude not be understande of comyn peple/ and desired me to vse olde and homely termes in my translacyons. And fayn wolde I satysfye euery man/ and so to doo, toke an olde boke and redde therein/ and certaynly the englysshe was so rude and

brood that I coude not wele vnderstande it. And also my lorde abbot of westmynster ded do shewe to me late certayn euidences wryton in olde englysshe, for to reduce it into our englysshe now vsid/ and certaynly it was wreton in such wyse that it was more lyke to dutche than englysshe; I coude not reduce ne brynge it to be vnderstonden/ And certaynly our langage now vsed varyeth ferre from that whiche was vsed and spoken whan I was borne/ For we englysshe men/ ben borne vnder the domynacyon of the mone, whiche is neuer stedfaste/ but euer wauerynge/ wexynge one season/ and waneth & dyscreaseth another season."[1]

Caxton then adds that his book is not translated "for a rude uplondyssh man to laboure therin," but for the clerk and gentleman, and if these do not understand his words, let them go read Vergil and the other Latin writers, and then they shall lightly understand all. It is plain from what he says here that Caxton's sympathies were with the enrichers rather than with the conservatives.

As a further illustration of Caxton's method of Latinizing and Gallicizing English, we may quote the following extract from the *Eneydos:*

"For to here/ opene/ and declare the matere of whiche hereafter shall be made mencyon/ It behoueth to presuppose that Troye, the grete capytall cyte/ and thexcellentest of alle the cytees of the countre & regyon of Asye, was constructe and edefyed by the ryght puyssaunt & renomed kyng Pryamus, sone of laomedon,

[1] Comyn = common; brood = broad; ferre = far. The cross-bar, used in the above passage, is found in manuscripts and early printed books as a kind of punctuation, standing either for a period or a comma. It is not, however, very consistently employed.

descended of thauncyen stocke of Dardanus by many degrees/ whiche was sone of Jubyter & of Electra his wyf, after the fyctions poetyque/ And the fyrste orygynall begynnynge of the genealogye of kynges. And the sayd Troye was enuyronned in fourme of siege/ and of excidyon by Agamenon, kynge in grece, brother of menelaus/ whiche was husbonde to helayne. The whiche agamenon, assembled and accompanyed wyth many kynges, dukes/ erles/ and grete quantyte of other princes & grekes innumerable, hadde the magystracyon and vnyuersall gouernaunce of alle thexcersite and hoost to-fore Troye." [1]

The words in this passage which would likely have seemed strange to an unlearned Englishman of Caxton's day are the following: declare; matere = matter; mencyon = mention; presuppose; capytall; thexcellentest = the excellentest; regyoun = region; constructe (from Latin *constructum*); edefyed = edified (from Latin *aedifico*, I build); puyssaunt; renomed = renowned; descended; thauncyen = the ancient; degrees; fyctions; poetyque; orygynall; genealogye; enuyronned; fourme = form; excidyon (from *excidium* = siege); assembled; accompanyed; quantyte; innumerable; magistracyon = magistracy; vnyuersall; gouernaunce; thexcersite = the excersite (from Latin *exercitus*, army). Of these it is interesting to observe that only two, *excidyon* and *excersite*, are altogether unknown to the Modern English reader, and that most of the rest are perfectly familiar to any adult person of average education. One or two are used in somewhat unusual senses, as, for example, *edefyed* in the sense of

[1] *Eneydos*, pp. 10–11.

"built" (but cf. Modern English "edifice"); but the meanings seem strange because our Modern English words have ceased to be used with the strict etymological value that Caxton gives them. It is interesting to observe also that Caxton endeavors often to explain and define his new and strange words by coupling them with words of similar meaning and familiar form, as, for example, *opene and declare; countre & regyon; first orygynall begynnynge; of siege and of excidyon; excersite and hoost.* But sometimes also he puts two new words together, trusting perhaps that they will explain each other, as *constructe*[1] *and edefyed; puyssaunt & renomed; assembled and accompanyed.*

Caxton gives great credit to Chaucer as a pioneer in this attempt to enrich the English language which he carries on. In the Proem, or Preface, to his edition of *The Canterbury Tales* he praises Chaucer in the following terms, which indeed carry the methods of the enrichers to the limits of absurdity:

"For to-fore that he [i. e., Chaucer] by labour embellished, ornated and made fair our English, in this realm was had rude speech and incongruous, as yet it appeareth by old books, which at this day ought not to have place ne be compared among, ne to, his beauteous volumes and

[1] The form *constructe* is a past participle formed from the Latin past participle *constructum*, the present form of which is *construo*, "I build or construct." It could be appreciated as a past participle only by those who were aware of this etymology; for the normal English feeling for a past participle demanded a participial *-ed* ending; and so as the word came to be accepted into general use, it took the past participial form *constructed*. In legal phraseology, however, the form *situate* (without the *-ed*) is still used as a past participle, being of the same formation as Caxton's *constructe*. The present form of Latin *construo* appears in English *construe*, the past participle of which is no longer felt to be *construct* but *construed*.

ornate writings, of whom he made many books and treatises of many a noble history, as well in metre as in rhyme and prose; and them so craftily made that he comprehended his matters in short, quick, and high sentences, eschewing prolixity, casting away the chaff of superfluity, and shewing the picked grain of sentence uttered by crafty and sugared eloquence."[1]

Caxton, however, is unfair to Chaucer in counting him among the conscious enrichers of the language. Chaucer, to be sure, used a great many words which were not in the English vocabulary before the period of French influence. But the words which Chaucer used were almost all of them words which had acquired citizenship in the English language of his time. He used them because in the centuries which had followed the Conquest they had come to be standard English words.

Another scholar and author of this period who was extremely zealous in his efforts to enrich the language was Sir Thomas Elyot (1490?–1546). Among Elyot's numerous books written in English, the most interesting and important is *The Boke named the Gouernour*, published in 1531, a book on general political philosophy and the theory of education. Convinced of the poverty of the Old English, or native, vocabulary as compared with the Latin, Greek, and French, Elyot set about the task of augmenting or enriching his English vocabulary. Naturally, his strange words met with the same opposition that Caxton's had found. "Diuers men," he says, "rather scornyng my benefite than receyuing it thankfully, doo shewe them selfes offended (as they say) with my strange termes." He was gratified, however,

[1] See Pollard, *Fifteenth Century Prose and Verse*, p. 232.

that his work should meet with the approval of the king, Henry VIII, and he expresses the purpose of his reforms as follows: "His Highnesse benignely receyuynge my boke, whiche I named *The Gouernour*, in the redynge therof sone perceyued that I intended to augment our Englyshe tongue whereby men shulde as well expresse more abundantly the thynge that they conceyued in theyr hartis (wherefore language was ordeyned), hauynge wordes apte for the pourpose, as also interprete out of greke, latyn or any other tonge into Englysshe, as sufficiently as out of any one of the said tongues into an other. His Grace also perceyued that throughout the boke there was no terme new made by me of a latin or frenche worde, but it is there declared so playnly by one mene or other to a diligent reder, that no sentence is thereby made derke or harde to be understande." [1]

Among the examples of what were regarded as "strange termes" in his day, but which have now become generally accepted as commonplace words in the language, Elyot mentions *industry*, *magnanimity*, *maturity*, *sobriety*, and *temperance*. Thomas Nashe, a few years later, finds much to criticize in the vocabulary of his literary enemy, Gabriel Harvey. Among the words and phrases used by Harvey which sound strange to-day may be cited the following: *canicular tales; effectuate; addoulce his melodie; polimechany.* But by far the greater number of those words mentioned by Nashe are good, if somewhat learned English to-day; a few may be given in modern spelling: *ingenuity; putative opinions; artificiality; cordial liquor; perfunctory discourses; the*

[1] Crofts, *The Boke named the Gouernour*, p. lxvi.

gracious law of amnesty; amicable end; extensively employed; notoriety; negotiation; mechanician. Like Caxton, Nashe is of the opinion that Chaucer was a great innovator in the use of words, but declares that if Chaucer had lived to his time, he would have discarded the harsher sort of his strange words. They were, he says, the ooze "which ouerflowing barbarisme, withdrawne to her Scottish Northren chanell, had left behind her. Art, like yong grasse in the spring of Chaucers florishing, was glad to peepe vp through any slime of corruption, to be beholding to she car'd not whome for apparaile, trauailing in those colde countries."[1] Yet Nashe himself is very fond of a learned word, and in reading any of his or his contemporary's works, one is surprised to find how many of their Latin words have made their way into accepted use. There are, to be sure, many words which were probably never again used after the immediate occasion which called them into being. As we might expect, when a scholarly author sets to work with the avowed intent of enriching the language, he is sure to be led into numerous extravagances. And the extremists among the Latinists, or enrichers, were undoubtedly fair game for such satire as that of Thomas Wilson, in his *Three Orations of Demosthenes*, 1570, where he gives the following high-sounding letter, purporting to have come to him from an old schoolfellow: "Pondering, expending, and revoluting with myself your ingent affability and ingenious capacity for mundane affairs, I cannot but celebrate and extol your magnificent dexterity above all other. . . . I doubt not but

[1] *Works*, ed. McKerrow, I, 317. The work in which this passage appeared was first printed in 1592.

you will adjuvate such poor adnichilate orphans as whilom condisciples with you and of antique familiarity in Lincolnshire."[1]

Another satire on extravagance in the use of big words is to be found in the character of Rombus, the schoolmaster, in Sir Philip Sidney's mask *The Lady of May*. Rombus addresses his ignorant companions in language like th following: "Why, you brute nebulons, have you had my corpusculum so long among you, and cannot yet tell how to edify an argument? Attend and throw your ears to me . . . till I have endoctrinated your plumbeous cerebrosities!"[2] With the character of Rombus should also be compared the three artificial characters in Shakspere's *Love's Labour's Lost*, the Spanish Knight, Don Armado, with "a mint of phrases in his brain," Sir Nathaniel, the curate, and the pedantic schoolmaster, Holofernes.

The extravagances of these satirical characters expressing (as they undoubtedly do) to a certain extent the methods of the augmenters of English, it will be readily seen that the conservatives and opponents of the introduction of new words had an important and necessary duty to perform. If the Latinists had been allowed full sway, they would practically have turned English into a sort of mongrel Latin dialect. The conservatives, or the Saxonists as we may call them to distinguish them from the Latinists, therefore had considerable justice on their side, and indeed defended their cause with ability. Yet it is interesting to see that even the most conservative of the Saxonists are driven unconsciously to

[1] Quoted in Raleigh's *Introduction to Hoby's Courtier* p. xliii.
[2] *Miscellaneous Works of Sidney*, ed. Gray, p. 274.

use many words of recent introduction from Latin. The language needed these words to express the ideas which both Saxonists and Latinists wanted to express; it needed them to become the cosmopolitan and universal language which even the Saxonists would have it to be; and so, tho they were conservatives, they could not be altogether reactionary and unprogressive. The head of this conservative faction may be regarded as Sir John Cheke, first Regius Professor of Greek in Cambridge University (1540), who lays down the principles of his school in a letter to his "loving frind Mayster Thomas Hoby," which Hoby prefixes to his translation of Castiglione's *Courtier*. His statement is as follows: "I am of this opinion that our tung should be written cleane and pure, unmixt and unmangeled with borowing of other tunges, wherein we take not heed by tijm, ever borrowing and never payeng, she shall be fain to keep her house as bankrupt. For then doth our tung naturallie and praisablie utter her meaning, when she bouroweth no counterfeitness of other tunges to attire her self withall, but useth plainlie her own, with such shift as nature, craft, experiens and following excellent doth lead her unto, and if she want at ani tijm (as being unperfight she must), yet let her borow with such bashfulness that it mai appeer, that if either the mould of our own tung could serve us to fascion a woord of our own, or if the old denisoned wordes could content and ease this neede, we wold not boldly venture of unknowen wordes."

In his *Toxophilus*, published in 1545, Roger Ascham also ranges himself under the banner of the conservatives. "He that wyll wryte well in any tongue," he

says, "must folowe thys councel of Aristotle, to speake as the comon people do, to think as wise men do. Many English writers haue not done so, but usinge straunge wordes as latin, french, and Italian, do make all thinges darke and harde. Ones I communed with a man whiche reasoned the englyshe tongue to be enryched and encreased thereby, sayinge: Who wyll not prayse that feaste, where a man shall drinke at a diner bothe wyne, ale, and beere? Truely, quod I, they be all good, euery one taken by hym selfe alone, but if you putte Malmesye and sacke, read wyne and whyte, ale and beere, and al in one pot, you shall make a drynke neyther easie to be knowen nor yet holsom for the body." A similar argument is made by Wilson, in his *Arte of Rhetorike* (1553): "Some seke so far for outlandishe English, that they forget altogether their mother's language — and yet these fine English clerks will saie they speke in their mother tongue, if a man should charge them for counterfeyting the king's English. He that cometh lately out of France, will talke Frenche Englishe, and never blush at the matter. Another choppes in with English Italianated, and applieth the Italian phrase to our English speaking . . . I know them that thinke Rhetorike to stand wholie upon darke wordes; and he that can catche an ynkehorne term by the tail, hym they compt [1] to be a fine Englishman and good rhetorician."

The same side is taken by Gascoigne in his *Posies*, published in 1575. He declares that he has "alwayes bene of opinion that it is not unpossible eyther in Poemes or in Prose too write both compendiously and perfectly in our English tongue. And therefore, although I chal-

[1] From Latin *computo* = Modern English "count."

enge not unto my selfe the name of an English Poet, yet may the Reader finde oute in my wrytings, that I have more faulted in keeping the olde English wordes (*quam-vis iam obsoleta*) than in borrowing of other such Epithetes and Adjectives as smell of the Inkhorne."[1] And, to quote one more of these scholar-critics, we find Puttenham, in his *Art of Poesie* (1589), joining the chorus: "We finde in our English writers many wordes and speaches amendable; and ye shall see in some many inkhorne termes so ill affected, brought in by men of learnyng, as preachers and schoolemasters: and many straunge termes of other languages, by secretaries and marchaunts and travailours, and many darke wordes, and not usual nor well sounding, though they be daily spoken in court."

But these complaints and cautionings of the conservatives were largely in vain. The result of the conflict between the Latinists and the Saxonists was a virtual victory for the Latinists. The whole situation is admirably summed up in the following passage from a contemporary writer, who is rebutting the argument of those conservatives who maintained that English had lost its credit and become completely bankrupt as result of wholesale borrowing:

"I mervaile how our English tongue hath crackt it credit, that it may not borrow of the Latine as wel as other tongues; and if it have broken[2] it is but of late, for it is not unknowen to all men, how many wordes we have fetcht from thence

[1] *The Posies*, edited by Cunliffe, Vol. I, p. 5. Elsewhere he adds that he has rather "regarde to make our native language commendable in it selfe, than gay with the feathers of straunge birdes."

[2] That is, if it has become bankrupt.

within these few yeeres, which if they should be all counted ink-pot tearmes, I know not how we shall speake anie thing without blacking our mouthes with inke: for what word can be more plain than this word (plain), and yet what can come more neere to the Latine? What more manifest than (manifest)? and yet in a manner Latine: what more commune than (rare), or lesse rare than (commune), and yet both of them comming of the Latine? But you will saie, long use hath made these wordes currant: and why may not use doe as much for those wordes which we shall now devise? Why should we not doe as much for the posteritie as we have received of the antiquitie? . . . But how hardlie soever you deale with youre tongue, how barbarous soever you count it, how little soever you esteeme it, I durst myselfe undertake (if I were furnished with learning otherwise) to write in it as copiouslie for varietie, as compendiously for brevitie, as choicely for words, as pithilie for sentences, as pleasantlie for figures, and everie waie as eloquentlie, as anie writer should do in anie vulgar tongue whatsoever."[1]

To be sure not all the words, or perhaps even most of them, which the enrichers attempted to add to the English vocabulary were accepted into general use. But the principle of their contention was accepted by all, and of course a great many of their specific recommendations. It was felt that the English language to be a fitting medium for the expression of all the thought of Europe, of all that the Greek, the Latin, the Italian, and the French had expressed, needed to extend its resources. The result was not a wholesale and violent importation of foreign words, but rather a tendency towards a generous

[1] From *The Civile Conversation of M. Stephen Guazzo . . . translated by G. Pettie out of French* (1586), quoted by Raleigh, Hoby's *Courtier*, pp xlv–xlvi.

liberalism which allowed a writer to introduce whatever words he could make good use of. Naturally these additions to the vocabulary were largely learned or semi-learned words. There was no reason why common objects should receive new names, since they already had perfectly adequate terms to designate them; but ideas of a more or less abstract character, descriptive words often, and words designating actions, these frequently required the invention of a new term. Even when the language already possessed a fairly adequate word, the invention of a new and synonymous one often enabled a writer to express himself more exactly or more musically and rhythmically. It is of course absurd to give a single reason for so complex an appearance as the Elizabethan period of English literature, with its unequaled throng of poets and dramatists, Shakspere at their head. But it is perhaps not unreasonable to suppose that the broadening and extending of the English language in the Renascence period, through its assimilation to itself of all the preceding culture of Europe, was a necessary preliminary to the appearance of a world-poet like Shakspere in England. There is, to be sure, no telling that Shakspere might not have been born and expressed himself just as powerfully and with just as universal an appeal if the language had not been subjected to the critical examination and augmentation of the Latinist theorizers, if it had remained practically as it was at the end of the fifteenth century. We cannot prove that this would not have been true, but we can fairly doubt it. We can point out that no other Teutonic nation has produced a figure to be compared with Shakspere, with the possible exception of Goethe, in

Germany, and that even Goethe, who lived and died two centuries after Shakspere, must yield to the great Elizabethan when we consider both from the side of their cosmopolitan appeal. Goethe is the greatest poet of Germany, but Goethe is not known and admired in Italy, France, and England as Shakspere is in Italy, France, and Germany. The French influence of the Middle English period, followed by the classical influence of the Renascence period, both working upon the solid and constant Teutonic base, these are the great influences which have made the English language what it is, have given it a variety, a richness, and an adaptability that enabled a great poet like Shakspere to use it as the measure, not only of all English thought, but of the thought of the western world.

19. **Word-pairs in English.** Before passing on to the consideration of later borrowings in English, one question relating to the earlier borrowings frequently misstated and misunderstood must be given a moment's attention. This is the question of the use of words in pairs by the English writers of the Middle English and Renascence periods, as in the following examples from the Prayer Book (1549): *pray and beseech; dissemble nor cloak; vanquish and overcome; defender and keeper; dearth and scarcity*, etc. It is often mistakenly supposed that this habit of using two synonymous words for one idea arose in the Middle English period as a result of the bilingual development of English at that time. It is assumed that a writer when he used a word of French origin would join with it an explaining word of similar meaning of English origin, and, *vice versa*, a

word of English origin would be used to explain a word of French origin.[1]

An examination of actual usage, however, does not support the theory, since it is found that words occur in pairs without reference to their etymological origin. In Chaucer's *Prolog*, for example, occur sixteen word-pairs consisting of one French and one English word, thirteen in which both are English, and nine in which both are French, making a total of twenty-two in which the theory of bilingualism is not illustrated as opposed to sixteen in which it might be illustrated.[2]

But there are other good reasons besides this testimony of actual practice for disbelieving that their etymological origin had anything to do with the coupling of words together in pairs. An examination of earlier English literature before the time of French influence, and consequently before any bilingual tendencies can be supposed to operate, shows the same custom in the use of synonymous word-pairs. In the *Blickling Homilies*, for example, written towards the end of the tenth century, in the Alfredian translation of Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*, and elsewhere, we find word-pairs very abundantly used, both words necessarily being English. Moreover, it would be easy to find illustrations of the same device of expression in other languages than English, for example, in the Latin of Cicero, in which the theory of bilingualism could not possibly enter. In short, the real explanation of the use of words in pairs is rhetorical and oratorical rather than etymological. By the use of two

[1] For a typical misstatement of the question, see Earle, *Philology of the English Tongue* (1892), §§ 77, 78.

[2] See Emerson, *Modern Language Notes*, viii, 202-206.

words a writer often gets a richer cadence, an oratorical amplification of the expression that may seem to him more effective than the use of a single word would be. A language rich in synonyms, as, for example, Modern English, is peculiarly liable to an abuse of this rhetorical device; it is an easy one, and young writers are much given to the use of two parallel words where one would answer as well. This is due less to a desire for clearness than "to that craving for symmetry which finds expression in all varieties of antitheses and balance. . . . Mr. Swinburne's adjectives and substantives hunt in fierce couples through the rich jungle of his prose. The taste for pairs, once acquired, like all the tastes of the wealthy, is hard to put off."[1] Altho the origin and the use of word-pairs is due to some such rhetorical or oratorical cause as has been mentioned, it should not be overlooked that in the period of the Renascence, with its more or less conscious attitude towards vocabulary, the doctrine of bilingualism is a little more to the point in explaining the use of word-pairs. Undoubtedly a strange word was often explained by coupling with it a familiar word, and both Caxton and Sir Thomas Elyot expressly state that such was their custom. Translators were especially given to the use of several words in translating a single word of their original. Lord Berners' translation of Froissart, for example, has such groups as the following: "they show, open, manifest and declare to the reader"; "what we should inquire, desire and follow"; "with what labors, dangers and perils," etc. Caxton, also, in order to make sure that he is expressing the meaning of his original fully,

[1] Raleigh, Introduction to Hoby's *Courtier*, p. lviii.

often uses two synonymous words, without reference however to etymology, when the French or Latin from which he is translating uses but a single word.[1]

20. **Later Borrowings in English.** No later period of English has borrowed words so freely from other languages as did the Middle English and the Renascence periods. By the beginning of the seventeenth century the English vocabulary in its main outlines was fixed for once and all. Consequently in reading Shakspere, altho there are occasional words which have become obsolete, or which are now used in somewhat different senses from Shakspere's, we nevertheless feel that in general the dramatist's vocabulary is Modern English. It is no longer in an experimental stage, as, for example, Caxton's is, but is the definitely fixed and settled vocabulary of the English language. This does not mean that no new words have been added to English since Shakspere's time. On the contrary, the language has been continually receiving new words; it does so to-day, and will doubtless continue to borrow from other languages as long as the English people are thrown into contact with other peoples.

21. **Later Borrowings from French.** French words have been taken over into English in modern times most abundantly in the late seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, in the so-called Augustan or Classical period of English literature. At this time French again came to be regarded in England as a polite language. This was partly

[1] For further discussion of these points, see Raleigh, as above; Griffin, in the *Publications of the Modern Language Association*, xv, 172, note; Hart, "Rhetoric in the Translation of Bede," in *An English Miscellany, presented to Dr. Furnivall*, pp. 150–154.

due to the influence of Charles II, who, having acquired French tastes during his residence in France, transferred his French habits and preferences to the English court on his restoration to the English throne in 1660. It became a fashionable custom of the time to interlard one's speech with French words and phrases, a custom which is frequently satirized in the comedies of the period. Nevertheless a good number of the faddish and fashionable words thus introduced seemed to be needed, since they have persisted in the language, and have now become every-day words in the vocabulary. Examples are words like *cadet*, *caprice*, *caress*, *coquet*, *dessert*, *festoon*, *gazette*, *grimace*, *grotesque*, *guitar*. It should be noted that many of the French words introduced in this period have the accent on the second syllable, following thus the French rule of accent, whereas words of French origin introduced in the earlier periods have all changed the accent from the second to the first syllable, following the English rule, as, for example, *palace* (French *palais'*), *courage* (French *courage'*). In general it is a safe rule that when a word of French origin bears an accent on the second syllable, the word is of late introduction into English.

In contemporary English, French words of several kinds have been borrowed. We have, for example, a number of words which constitute what might be called hotel French, such as *menu*, *entrée*, *carafe*, *chef*, *demi tasse*, *suite* (of rooms), *table d'hôte*, *à la carte*, etc. Another group comes under the head of milliner's French, words like *toilette*, *habit* (meaning *dress*); *coiffure*, *manteau*, etc.; and another might be called society French, words like *début*, *fiancée*, *née*, *soirée*, *musicale*, etc.

The interest of the French in automobiles and mechanical invention in general has resulted in the common use of a number of words which may be called engineer's French, e. g., *aeronaut*, *aerostat*, *caisson*, *chauffeur*, *garage*, *tonneau*, etc.

It is interesting to note that the balance between Modern English borrowings from French and Modern French borrowings from English inclines rather in favor of the English. Some of the English words taken over into French in the last two centuries are the following: *redingote* (English *riding-coat*), *jockey*, *rhum* (English *rum*), *rosbif* (*roast-beef*), *ponche* (*punch*), *pique-nique* (*picnic*), *boulingrin* (*bowling-green*), *club*, *boghei* (*buggy*), *dog-cart*, *tramway*, *cricket*, *foot-ball*, *boule-dogue* (*bull-dog*), *lawn tennis*, *bifteck* (*beefsteak*), *pannequet* (*pancake*), *sandwich*, *châle* (*shawl*), *black-bouler* (*to blackball*), *fifoclock* (*five o'clock*), *higlif* (*high life*), *toast*, *home*.[1]

22. **Borrowings from German.** English has never shown a strong tendency to borrow from German, and the number of German words in the English vocabulary is consequently small. Some of those which have been taken, however, are very characteristic words, like *waltz*, *carouse*, *poodle*, *meerschaum*; a few words naming objects or foods, like *pretzel*, *stein* (a drinking-mug), *sauer-kraut*, *mangel-wurzel* (the name of a vegetable). A number of words naming minerals, *bismuth*, *blende*, *cobalt*, *quartz*, *shale*, *zinc*, etc. are from German, illustrating

[1] See Nyrop, *Grammaire historique de la Langue Française*, Vol. I, pp. 75, 84–85. Nyrop remarks, p. 84, that "the language which unquestionably has furnished and which continues to furnish the largest number of borrowed words to modern French is English." The words are especially those connected with "commerce, manufacturing, sport, and fashion."

the fact that "it was in Germany that mineralogy first attained the rank of a science."[1] The word *carouse*, from German *gar aus*, that is, "all out," was taken over in the early Elizabethan period. It designated originally a drinking custom similar to that known as drinking *super nagulum* — "which is, after a man hath turnd vp the bottom of the cup, to drop it on hys naile and make a pearle with that is left; which, if it slide, and he cannot mak stand on, by reason thers too much, he must drinke againe for his penance."[2]

A few words are more or less used in their German form, tho they can hardly be said to have been adopted into English. Examples are *heimweh*, "homesickness"; *zeitgeist*, literally "time-spirit," that is, "the spirit of the age"; *weltschmerz*, literally "world-pain," "weariness of the world"; *vaterland*, "fatherland"; *hinterland*, meaning the region or land back of a seaport necessary to support it. In the instance of the phrase *lèse majesté*, a French phrase is borrowed to designate what has come to be regarded as distinctly a German idea, the German word for it being *majestätsbeleidigung*. The word *kindergarten* came into English with the thing itself, which originated in Germany.

On the other hand, the Germans, like the French, have borrowed, and continue to borrow freely, from English, especially of recent years. The words which they have taken over are of many different kinds. Many words of more or less fashionable character have been borrowed, showing the German admiration for English social customs and conduct. A few such words

[1] Bradley, *Making of English*, p. 103.
[2] Nashe, *Pierce Penilesse*, ed. Grosart, II, 78.

are the following: *butler*, *groom*, *nurse*, *porter*, *gentleman*, *four-in-hand*, *schlips* (meaning *necktie*, and adapted from English *slip*, which, of course, never meant necktie; the Germans, however, confused the word with their own native word for *necktie*, i. e., *Schleife*); *smoking* (for Tuxedo coat, being an abbreviation of *smoking-jacket*); *knock-about* (a soft felt hat); *Raglan*, *Redingote*, *Mackintosh*, *Spenzer* (English *Spencer*), *Ulster*, all these being names of different kinds of coats. Numerous words were taken over into what the Germans call "sport," meaning thereby usually field-sports after the English fashion. Examples are *cricket*, *croquet*, *lawn-tennis* (with all the terminology of tennis), *goal*, *golf*, *handicap*, *rekord* (English *record*), *sweater*, *trainer*, *turf*, *jockei* (*jockey*), *finish*, *robber* (i. e., *rubber*, in whist), etc. Words of nautical and seafaring character in general have also been borrowed, e. g., *brigg* (*brig*), *chartern* (*to charter*), *driften* (*to drift*), *ballast*, *jacht* (*yacht*), *sloop*, *steward*, *tender*, *top* (of mast), *trimmen* (*to trim*, i. e., sails, etc.), *kommodore* (*commodore*), *schmack* (*smack*), etc. A few further miscellaneous illustrations are the following: *bombast*, *essay*, *slang*, *clown*, *punch*, *humbug*, *lift* (i. e., *elevator*), *dschungel* (*jungle*, Kipling's *Jungle Book* being called *Dschungelbuch*), *scheck* (*check*), *stocks*, *store*, *streik*, *streiken* (*strike*, *to strike*), *kake* (*cake*), etc.[1]

23. **Various Borrowings in English**. From Italian Modern English has borrowed a number of words, chiefly relating to music and the fine arts, as, for ex-

[1] See Meyerfeld, *Von Sprach und Art der Deutschen und Engländer*, Berlin, 1903; also an article by Professor Tombo, Jr., in the *New Yorker Staats-Zeitung*, August 18, 1907.

ample, *piano*, *opera*, *studio*, *fresco*. Words of Spanish origin are *desperado*, *matador*, *ambuscade*, *grandee*, and a few others. From Russian have come *knout*, *steppe*, *verst*, and very recently *duma* (also spelled *douma* and *douhma*), *vodka*, *ikon*, *pogrom*, etc. Modern Dutch has given a number of nautical terms, e. g., *boom*, *dock*, *hull*, *sloop*, *yacht*, *skipper*. A few words have entered Modern English from the Scandinavian languages, e. g., *floe*, *fiord*, *viking*, *troll*, *saga*, *geyser*, *gantlet*, *ski*. As a result of the English occupation of India, a number of words of East Indian origin have made their way into English; examples are *bandanna*, *chutney* (a kind of sauce), *cowry*, *loot*, *indigo*, *rajah*, *rupee*, etc. From the American Indians we have borrowed *squaw*, *wigwam*, *wampum*, *tobacco*, *potato*, *toboggan*, *moccasin*, *pemmican*, besides, of course, many place names. From Malay have come *gingham*, *gong*, *gutta-percha*, *lory*, *orang-outang*, *amuck*, and *ketchup*.[1] From Chinese have come *tea*, *mandarin*, *ginseng;* from the Philippines, *datto*, *manila;* from the Polynesian dialects, *taboo*, *tattoo*. Perhaps there is no people with which the English have come in contact for any length of time that has not added a word or two to the language. These words are all interesting as showing the kinds of relations which existed between the English and the various other peoples. But relatively their number must always be small. Modern English has not felt the need of any very extensive borrowing, and with one exception, to be noted in the next paragraph, has managed to get along satisfactorily on its inherited resources. Foreign words are sometimes taken into the language

[1] Bradley, *Making of English*, p. 104.

temporarily. They are used as long as the special circumstances which called them into prominence are present, but afterwards they pass completely out of use. Thus, during the Spanish-American war a number of words became familiar to the American public through their use in the newspapers, words like *pronunciamento*, *machete*, *reconcentrado;* and during the Boer war a number of South African words gained considerable currency, as, for example, *kopje* (hill), *trek*, *laager*, *Uitlander*. But such words might be called "occasional words." They do not respond to any permanent need of the people, and after the occasion which brings them into use, they tend to disappear altogether from the language.

The one instance in which Modern English continues to borrow freely from foreign languages is in its scientific and pseudo-scientific vocabulary. Here the general tendency is to name all new inventions and discoveries by Latin or Greek words, usually the former, either separately or in composition. Thus Lord Rayleigh, the discoverer of the new element argon a few years ago, made up the name for it from the two Greek elements *a-*, a prefix with a negative value, like English *in-*, and *ἔργον*, *work*, the whole meaning "not working," or "inactive," the significance of the name being found in the fact that argon does not readily combine with other elements. The recently discovered Roentgen rays have also brought to light a new substance, *radium*, the name of which is taken from the Latin *radium*, "ray," the characteristic of the substance being the emission of rays of light. Some of the applications of science to practical purposes have carried with them their classical terminol-

ogy. The word *telephone*, for example, is made up of two Greek elements, τηλε-, "far," and φωνή, "sound." Words like *telegram*, *telegraph*, *telharmonic*, are similar compounds. The word *phonograph* is made up of Greek φωνή, "sound," and the root γραφ-, meaning "to write," the whole word thus meaning literally "sound-writer." *Automobile* is a hybrid compound, that is, its two elements are taken from different languages, *auto-* being from Greek αὐτόν, "self," and *mobile* from the Latin word of the same form, meaning "moving," the whole compound meaning therefore "self-moving." Other words entirely from Latin are *carbon*, from Latin *carbo; insulation* from *insulate*, which is a past participle from the Latin verb *insulare*, formed from the noun *insula*, "island" (cf. isolate); *calcium* from Latin *calx; spectrum*, from the Latin word of the same form.

Commercial terms are also often made of Latin or Greek words, as, for example, the names of products like *glucose*, *oleomargarine*, *cottolene;* the tooth-powder called *sozodont* from Greek σώζω, "I save," and ὀδόντ-, "tooth"; and a great many others of like formation.

24. **Etymology.** Since the English vocabulary is derived from so many different sources, it will be readily seen that the study of etymology, which is the study of the origin and history of words, is one of peculiar importance to those whose native speech is English. It is not always, or indeed generally, necessary to know the etymology of a word in order to use it correctly. Words mean to-day exactly the ideas which they convey from one person to another, and any forcible attempt to make their present use conform to their etymological meaning is pedantic and vain. Thus the word *villain* etymologi-

cally is related to village, and meant originally a serf, or person who was bound to the land. From the meaning of "serf" or "villager," through the stages "ignorant," then "degraded," the word has come to its present meaning, "an evil or wicked person." Its value therefore in Modern English must be determined by its use, not by its etymological history. Nevertheless, as one's knowledge of the history and origins of one's vocabulary increases, in the same degree one's use of words will grow in definiteness and certainty of meaning, and in richness of content. All great writers have been earnest etymologists; they have striven to give their words as full and rich a meaning as they would hold, and the reader, on his side, can get as much meaning out of them only when his knowledge equals that of his author.

Etymology, however, is something more than mere guess-work. Because two words look alike, it is not always safe to infer that they are forms of the same word. In Old English there are two words *god* and *gōd*, the first with a short vowel, giving Modern English *god*, the second, with the long vowel, giving Modern English *good*. But the two words are etymologically altogether distinct; one is not derived from the other, and the etymology which one hears sometimes from the lips of preachers, "God is good," is altogether false. In Modern English the adverb *gingerly*, as in the phrase "to touch something gingerly with the tips of the fingers," looks as though it had some connection with the noun *ginger*, — certainly not an obvious connection, altho with ingenuity one might be able to hammer it out. In fact, however, the word *gingerly* is not etymologically related to *ginger*, but to *gentle*, *gentry*, etc., and

the similarity in form does not indicate any relationship in meaning.[1] This method of explaining the etymologies of words by their general apparent similarities to other words was the one in common use until the comparatively recent results of the exact study of language, especially phonetics, enabled scholars to formulate the rules of etymologizing in a systematic and scientific way. Thus Chaucer, in his version of the life of St. Cecilia in the *Canterbury Tales*, following the custom of his period, gives a half dozen different etymologies of the name Cecilia, all of them pure guesses and all of them wrong. Shakspere, in *Cymbeline*,[2] gives a similarly fanciful etymology of the Latin word *mulier*, "woman," from *mollis aer*.

Two writers of modern times who were particularly given to the vicious habit of careless etymologizing are Carlyle[3] and Ruskin. In illustration of Ruskin's method we may quote the following passage: "What do you think the beautiful word 'wife' comes from? It is the great word in which the English and Latin languages conquer the French or Greek. I hope the French will some day get a word for it instead of their *femme*. But what do you think it comes from? The great value of the Saxon words is that they mean something. 'Wife'

[1] The word *niggard* is derived from a root-word found in Scandinavian and English, meaning *scanty, stingy*, plus the suffix *-ard*, as in *dullard, coward*, etc. This makes the point of the following humorous use of the word in Higginson's *Contemporaries*, p. 346: Dr. Hackett was annoyed by vagrant boys, who delighted in filling the keyhole of his hut with gravel. "Such conduct," Dr. Hackett said, "I should call, sir, — with no disrespect to the colored population, — niggardly."

[2] See *Cymbeline*, Act V, v, 446; also V, iv, 140, and V, v, 437.

[3] See *Sartor Resartus*, Chapter VII, where Carlyle gives the often-repeated but false etymology of *king* from *kenning* (cunning), "canning," "the one who can," or "is able."

means weaver.[1] You must be either house-wives or house-moths, remember that. In the deep sense, you must either weave men's fortunes and embroider them, or feed upon them and bring them to decay."

The absurdity of this is obvious. Whatever the word *wife* may at one time have meant, it certainly does not now mean *weaver*, and all of Ruskin's fine sentiment is based upon a manifest falsehood. The grave defect of all such etymologizing is that it takes account only of the mere surface similarities that exist between words, similarities which may or may not be indications of a real relationship, but which are never systematically tested or examined. The weakness of such etymologizing is usually to be found in the insufficient knowledge and observation of the etymologizer. Legitimate and sound etymologizing is not, indeed, work for novices. It is a science that follows a method; it has its rules and tests, and is not dependent only on clever guessing and imagination. The tests of a reasonable etymology are these: (1) it must be in accord with the phonetic laws concerned; (2) it must agree with common sense on the side of any change in meaning which the etymology supposes; and (3) in the case of borrowed words, it must agree with probability on the side of geographical and ethnological relationships. Thus, if we find a similarity between a Hottentot word and an English one of Chaucer's day, it must be shown that English might have borrowed from Hottentot, or *vice versa*, before an etymology deriving one from the other can become even probable. Until one has had considerable

[1] Presumably because *wife* and *weaver* have initial *w* in common, and the two somewhat similar sounds *f* and *v*.

practice in the principles involved, the safest method to follow in matters of etymology is to trust to the authority of reputable dictionaries and special works on that subject.

A considerable number of words, it should be observed, have been taken over into English in exactly the forms in which they occur in their original languages. The problem of etymology is here a very simple one, since the words suffer no change of form in transmission. Examples from German and French have been cited above. But the language from which such direct borrowings have most frequently been made is Latin. The following is a list of a few words in common use which have exactly the same form in both languages: *animal*, *apex*, *bonus*, *dogma* (originally Greek), *excursus*, *exit*, *extra*, *fungus*, *genius*, *index*, *odium*, *omen*, *onus*, *onyx*, *opium*, *pastor*, *pauper*, *premium*, *series*, *species*, *spectrum*, *terminus*, *transit*.

It was remarked above that the meaning of a word in Modern English is dependent on its present use, and not on its etymology, a point which should not be overlooked. The historical meanings of words and their contemporary meanings are often the same; but when the meaning which Shakspere or Chaucer gave to a word is different from the meaning which men give it to-day, the earlier meaning cannot impose itself on the modern meaning. People often say that a word *ought* to mean so and so, because its etymology is this or that. They forget that language is not determined by theories of what ought to be or what might be, but by the conditions of its actual use to-day. Thus Jeremy Taylor speaks of "holy and innocent idiots, or plain easy

people of the laity." A plain person might well resent being called an idiot to-day, because the word, originally from Greek *ἰδιώτης*, "a private person," hence a layman, as distinguished from a clerk, has developed very far away from its primary meaning. The word *lewd* has had a similar history. It is derived from Old English *læwed*, meaning simply a layman; like idiot it developed in an unfavorable direction, first into the meaning ignorant, then into its present uncomplimentary significance. To take another illustration, the word *mischief* now applies only to wrongful or vicious acts; it comes, however, from an Old French word which formerly meant merely "misfortune," "that which ends badly." *The Book of the Knight of the Tour Landry*, a work of good counsel which a father wrote for the use of his daughters at the end of the fourteenth century, and which was soon translated from the original French into English, uses the word in its old sense when it advises the daughters to be charitable, "in the same wise as seint Elizabeth, seint Luce, seint Cecile, and mani other ladyes that were charitables. They gauen the moste parte of thayre good vnto pore peple that were in necessite and mischeef."[1] The same book speaks of robbery, extortion, tyranny, murder, "and mani other inconueniencies."[2] To class robbery and murder together as inconveniences seems a little odd until we realize the original meaning of the word, which was "that which is not fitting," "wrong," from the Latin negative prefix *in-*, united to the present participle of *convenire*, to be fitting or proper.

[1] Early English Text Society, Vol. XXXIII, p. 152.
[2] Ibid., p. 92.

Certain words have persisted in English in occasional uses as faded, traditional survivals. They preserve the older forms of the words, but have lost the older meaning without supplying a definite new meaning. Thus we speak of a person as "wading through blood," or "wading in his own blood." One need only visualize the picture suggested by the modern sense of "wade" to see how ridiculous these phrases would seem if the word were given its literal meaning. But the word *wade* in these uses is only a colorless survival from its older sense, where it means merely "to go, walk," as in the following line:

Beholde how he wadeþ yn hys owne blod![1]

Another illustration is the phrase *time and tide*. The word *tide*, in the sense of "ocean tide," fairly fits its use in the familiar proverb, in which alone the phrase is used; but the idea of ocean tide is not usually in the minds of speakers when they pronounce the proverb. The word *tide* in the phrase really has no definite meaning, altho originally it had the same meaning as *time*, a sense which is still preserved in compounds like Christmas-tide, Whitsuntide, etc. In the proverb, therefore, it is merely a colorless survival, like *wade*. Occasional words of this nature are used in an affected way in modern literary style. Thus one now and then meets the phrase "hark back" in the sense "return to," as in the sentence "He harked back to the subject of his former discourse," or "He was continually harking back to the experiences of the preceding summer." It is often vaguely used also in the sense of "imitate," as when one

[1] *Meditations on the Passion*, Early English Text Society, Vol. LX, p. 17

poet is said to hark back to another. The phrase has necessarily become somewhat vague and unnatural, since its primary significance is lost, and no new definite meaning has been given to it. Originally it was a term in hunting, and was used of the hounds returning "along the course taken when the scent has been lost, till it is found again."[1] As long as this literal meaning was clear, the figurative sense of the phrase was intelligible; but with the loss of literal significance, it has become merely a traditional survival. Another phrase of the same kind is "at the first blush," as in the sentence, "At the first blush it would seem that the poets were little concerned with the practical affairs of life." The word "blush" has now no meaning which can make this phrase seem reasonable. Its earlier and primary meaning, however, was "look," "glance," and the phrase meant "at the first glance." Writers who use it nowadays do not often have any clear sense of its meaning, but affect it merely because they have read it in the works of some one else.

25. **Proportion of the Elements of the English Vocabulary.** Altho the English vocabulary has never ceased to open its doors for the introduction of foreign words, it must not be forgotten that it has always remained fundamentally and predominatingly English. The number of words of foreign origin used by different writers naturally varies with the style and manner of the writers; the same writer also uses sometimes more and sometimes fewer foreign words, depending largely upon the subject-matter of his composition. It has been estimated that the proportion of native words to foreign, counting

[1] See *New English Dictionary*, under "hark back."

each word every time it occurs, is in Shakspere 90 to 10; in the King James translation of the Bible, 94 to 6; in the writings of Dr. Johnson, 80 to 20; of the historian Gibbon, 70 to 30; of Tennyson, 88 to 12. In the normal colloquial English of an average educated person the proportion of words of foreign origin probably never rises above ten per cent. This low percentage of foreign words does not mean, however, that they are ineffective and unnoticeable in style. Of the ninety per cent of native words, a large part is made up of colorless words, like the articles, prepositions, conjunctions, etc.; and often the words which really give quality and tone to a passage in writing, or a phrase in speech, are just these occasional and somewhat exceptional words of foreign origin.

By far the greater part of the borrowed element in English is derived from Latin and Greek, either directly or through the medium of a French form. Some idea of the extent of this classical element in English can be formed from the fact that we have in English in common use, not counting the few occasional technical and scientific terms, words derived from about 450 Latin root-forms. Each of these root-forms is represented in English by a varying number of differentiated words. Thus the Latin root *ped-*, meaning "foot," appears at least in twelve common English words derived from it: *biped*, *expedite*, *impede*, *pawn* (a figure in the game of chess), *peon*, *pedal*, *pedestrian*, *pedicel*, *pedigree*, *pediment*, *pioneer*, *quadruped*.[1] Other roots are represented by even more words in English. The root *duc-*, for example, as in Latin *ducere*, "to lead," appears in

[1] For the etymology of all these words, consult the dictionary.

27 words in English; *fac-*, as in Latin *facere*, "to do," appears in 39 words; and *pon-*, as in *ponere*, "to place," appears in 36 words.

The number of English words derived from Greek roots is not so numerous as those derived from Latin, the total number of root-forms used with any frequency falling below a hundred. An example of a Greek root that has been abundantly productive in English is the root contained in the words λόγος, "a saying," and λέγειν, "to speak," which appears in all the following words: *analogy*, *apolog* (or *apologue*), *apology*, *catalog* (or *catalogue*), *decalog* (or *decalogue*), *dialect*, *dialog* (or *dialogue*), *eclectic*, *eclog* (or *eclogue*), *epilog* (or *epilogue*), *eulogy*, *lexicon*, *logarithm*, *logic*, *monolog* or (*monologue*), *prolog* (or *prologue*), *syllogism*, and in all words in *-logy*, as *astrology*, *biology*, *neurology*, etc.

26. **Purity of Vocabulary**. The question of purity of vocabulary is one of constant recurrence. According to the usual understanding of the term, that vocabulary is said to be "pure" which is made up altogether, or almost exclusively, from words of a single native stock. We have seen that the vocabulary of the Old English period, as compared with that of the Modern English period, is relatively very "pure." For altho Old English borrowed a few words from Latin in order to name objects which were brought to England by the Roman missionaries, in general the language was sparing in its use of new words, preferring, when necessary, to adapt an old word to a new meaning rather than borrow a new word outright. Later, however, first through the Scandinavian conquest, then through the French influence, then the Renascence, and finally the modern inter-

est in science, learning, and commerce, English has borrowed a vast number of words. From a "pure," a unilingual tongue, it has come to be a polyglot language, one made up of elements from a variety of languages.

Now it happens that this polyglot character of Modern English carries with it, to some minds, the connotation of "impurity." If a language made up of entirely native elements is "pure," they argue, then one made up of divers elements is "impure," and, to that extent, less admirable than the other. This feeling for the purity of the language is partly based upon patriotic sentiment, a reverence for the native idiom as such, a feeling perhaps praiseworthy in itself, but not one which alone should be allowed to determine all questions of vocabulary. Of infinitely more importance than patriotic sentiment is the matter of the effectiveness of the language in use. It is from this point of view that we shall consider briefly the question of purity.

The defense usually made for the pure, or Saxon, vocabulary has been best presented by Herbert Spencer, in his essay entitled *The Philosophy of Style*. Spencer argues for the "greater forcibleness of Saxon English, or rather non-Latin English"; and the reasons why he regards the Saxon, or native, vocabulary as more forcible than the foreign, are, first, early association, "the child's vocabulary being almost wholly Saxon"; and, second, the brevity of Saxon words as compared with words of foreign origin. Spencer further adds that we should endeavor to use concrete and specific words, which are usually of native origin, rather than abstract and general words, which are usually of foreign origin. Thus, he says, we should avoid such sentences as the following:

" In proportion as the manners, customs, and amusements of a nation are cruel and barbarous, the regulations of their penal code will be severe." Instead of this we should write: " In proportion as men delight in battles, bull-fights, and combats of gladiators, will they punish by hanging, burning, and the rack."

With these two sentences we may compare a sample of Spencer's own style, taken from the body of this same essay, the foreign words being italicized: " As we do not think in *generals* but in *particulars* — as, whenever any *class* of things is *referred* to, we *represent* it to ourselves by calling to mind *individual members* of it; it follows that when an *abstract* word is *used*, the hearer has to choose from his stock of *images*, one or more, by which he may *figure* to himself the *genus mentioned*."

Mr. Spencer's own style is in large measure the answer to his criticism. In the above passage of 66 words, there are 13 words of Latin origin, a proportion of 19⅔ per cent, which is the proportion of foreign words in the writings of Dr. Johnson. Moreover, the sentence quoted is an admirable illustration of general, or abstract, statement; it does not follow Mr. Spencer's own rule of always speaking in concrete terms — as indeed it should not, since the purpose of the sentence is to make a generalized statement, and not to give a group of concrete instances. Again, the words are not such as one usually finds in the vocabulary of children, nor are they remarkable for their brevity. One word, *genus*, is distinctly a learned word. Yet, in spite of the fact that the sentence, which is fairly representative of Mr. Spencer's style, breaks all the rules which he himself gives for a good style, it is nevertheless a good sentence. It has those

qualities of clearness, definiteness, and simplicity which are general characteristics of Mr. Spencer's writings, even when he writes on difficult and subtle matters of philosophy. It serves its purpose well, and if so, can anything more be asked of it? In short, the question of the proper and effective use of words is not dependent upon their length or their origin and history, but upon their immediate, contemporary value; and their value is always determined by the purpose which the person speaking or writing has in mind. Sometimes it is effective to use short words — if one wishes to produce the effect which short words produce. But long words also have their place, and the poetry of Milton shows that they can be used to good effect. All that we can say, therefore, as to the choice of words, is that we should use the words which fit the thought, whether they are Saxon or Latin. A Saxon word, because it is a Saxon word, has no special claims or special powers, nor, on the other hand, has a Latin word. A word is justified, or is not justified, by its effectiveness in expressing the thought or feeling of the person who uses it, and any considerations beyond this are vain theorizings.

There is one group of words of partial foreign origin that is often regarded with special disfavor by those who are governed by theories of the purity of language. This is the class of words known as hybrids. These are compound words, the elements of which are taken from two different languages, one element from Greek, Latin, or French, and the other from English. A number of such compounds are in common use in English, so common in fact that no one in natural speech is ever conscious that they are hybrids. Thus the word

because is made up of the English preposition *be-* and the Latin (through the French) *causa; around* is compounded of English *a-* and French *round; plentiful*, of French *plenti-* and English *-ful; outcry*, of English *out* and French *cry;* and so with a great many words. In general these hybrids have become so much a part of the language that it never occurs to any one to question them because of the manner of their formation. The hybrids which are picked out to bear the burden of the disapproval of the purists seem indeed to be rather arbitrarily chosen. Thus it is assumed that the Latin suffix *-al* should be united only to words of obviously Latin origin, as in *regal* from Latin *regalis; legal* from *legalis; communal* from *communalis*, etc. One word which violates this rule, and which the purist therefore brands as incorrect, is the adjective *racial*, compounded of *race* and *-al*.[1] That there is anything wrong or blameworthy, however, in combining *-al* with a root not obviously Latin, is disproved by such words as *tidal*, from English *tide* and *-al; postal*, from French *post* and *-al*, etc., which have been taken into accepted and general good use. If *racial* has not been taken into good use, there is no reason, so far as its compositional elements are concerned, why it should not be. Likewise the suffix *-ist*, which is ultimately of Greek origin, would be restricted by some theorists to composition only with words of Greek origin, as *chemist*, *atheist*, *monist*, etc. They would, therefore, disapprove of that free extension

[1] The following is typical: "The word *racial* is an ugly word, the strangeness of which is due to our instinctive feeling that the termination *-al* has no business at the end of a word that is not obviously Latin." *The King's English*, London, 1906, p. 22.

of the use of *-ist* by which it is united to words of Latin, English, or other origin, as, for example, words like *scientist*, *florist*, *druggist*, *dentist*, *tobacconist*, *contortionist*, *publicist*, *folk-lorist*, *tourist*, *typist*, *elocutionist*, *base-ballist*, *canoeist*, etc. It is not contended that all these words are in good, reputable use; but some of them certainly are, and the determination of the questions which are and which are not, or which should be and which should not be, has nothing to do with the elements of which they are composed. In short, the true guide to the use of hybrid compounds is to be found, not in the history of their etymology, but in their actual value in general use. If a hybrid compound expresses an idea adequately, it is in itself as good a word as any which is not a hybrid, since the so-called "pure" word cannot do any more. It may be that certain of these hybrids cited have not been accepted into good use, among which we may perhaps include *typist*, *canoeist*, *educationalist*, *conversationalist*, and others. But where this is true, the reason is not to be found in the mere fact of hybridity, since many hybrids have been accepted into good use. The reasons are undoubtedly various, dependent upon the separate history of each word; but what these reasons may be is a matter of little importance compared with the fact itself of the acceptance or the non-acceptance of the respective words into normal, unquestioned use. Such an acceptance is all the justification which a hybrid compound, or any other word for that matter, needs to make it a reputable word; and the acceptance or rejection of a word of whatever kind is a matter almost altogether independent of its etymology.

27. **Profit and Loss in Word-borrowing.** The question naturally arises, after a consideration of the elements of the English vocabulary, whether or not the language has been altogether the gainer by word-borrowing. That the introduction of foreign words has been advantageous in many ways is of course unquestioned. The language has not become bankrupt as a result of word-borrowing, as many of its Renascence critics feared it would. New ideas have been appropriated, new standards of thinking and conduct, and, as the race has grown in cosmopolitan spirit, its vocabulary has kept pace with it. Another gain from word-borrowing is to be found in the variety of the English vocabulary, especially its richness in synonyms. These synonyms, or approximately synonymous words, for language does not often preserve two words of exactly the same value, enable the discriminating writer to express extremely subtle shades of thought and feeling. In illustration of such terms we may cite word-pairs like the following: *science*, *knowledge; information*, *wisdom ; virtue*, *goodness ; malevolence*, *wickedness; benevolence*, *goodwill ; regal* or *royal*, *kingly ; infant*, *child* or *baby ; adults*, *elders*, etc. Sometimes we have four or five words with closely-related meanings, as *still*, *placid*, *quiet*, *calm*, *peaceful ;* or *vast*, *great*, *large*, *big*. Yet each of these has its own special uses. A big man is not the same as a great man.

Another advantage which the English vocabulary has by reason of its large number of words of foreign origin, especially of Latin origin, is that the language has at its disposal two widely different styles of expression, two planes of utterance, the one learned or elevated, the

other simple and popular. Perhaps this is not to be regarded as an unmixed advantage. Perhaps it would be better if the most learned and elevated ideas should be all expressed in our simplest vocabulary. Certainly it is true that the learned vocabulary of big words is a dangerous instrument for the inexperienced writer to work with, and of these dangers we shall have more to say later. But properly managed, the learned and high-sounding Latinized vocabulary serves a very useful purpose. For one thing, it enables the writer to give variety to the cadence of his phrasing. Long words may vary and alternate with short ones, according as the thought or mood of a passage changes. Certain effects of dignity and stateliness can be attained in style only by the judicious use of words which by their mere bulk and volume of sound are stately and dignified, and such words, it generally happens, are of Latin origin. The language is like a great organ, and the various classes of words are like its stops. The more stops, that is, the greater the number of kinds of words, the more varied and the richer are the effects which can be produced by the artist who is capable of playing upon the language.

An author who was specially successful in his use of the high-sounding word, of the rotund, oratorical style, was Sir Thomas Browne. His writings have the dignity and the stately eloquence that one associates with the monumental classic style. In illustration, a single sentence may be quoted from his *Hydriotaphia*, or *Urne-Buriall*, the first edition of which appeared in 1658. He is discussing the comparative advantages of burning and of burying as a means of disposing of the

ST. THOMAS COLLEGE
LIBRARY

dead, and says: "Some being of the opinion of *Thales*, that water was the original of all things, thought it most equal to submit unto the principle of putrefaction, and conclude in a moist relentment." An illustration of somewhat unpleasant subject-matter was chosen to show how the author's style rises superior to his subject. "To submit unto the principle of putrefaction," and "to conclude in a moist relentment" almost reconcile one to the thought of mortal decay. The expression, it must be confessed, is somewhat remote from the fact, and one is a little inclined to forget the matter of the sentence in dwelling on the cadence of its phrasing. Indeed the same question that troubled the minds of the conservative Renascence critics of English arises now in considering the style of Sir Thomas Browne and is continually arising in the consideration of Modern English style. English is always in danger of falling into a toploftical manner of expression which soon degenerates into empty mannerism. Perhaps it is not necessary to point out the fascination which the "grand style" often has for the unskilled writer. We may admire it in the pages of a master of the method, like Sir Thomas Browne, without setting it up as a general model of English style.

But the long words of the vocabulary lend themselves to other effects than those which are dignified and stately. By contrast with the simple vocabulary, the long word playfully used often has humorous value. This sort of humor, polysyllabic humor as it may be called, also has its dangers; it is an easy trick, and, like most easy tricks, tends to be overworked. Always to speak of one's house as "a domicile," or of a horse as "an equine quadruped," is as cheap and tiresome a

form of humor as constant punning. Sparingly used, however, the polysyllable is not without a touch of quaintness and charm. Charles Lamb is fond of this humorous device, tho he also is occasionally guilty of a too abundant use of it. As an instance of his more successful manner, we may quote the following paragraph from the opening of his essay on *The Praise of Chimney Sweeps:* "I like to meet a sweep — understand me — not a grown sweeper — old chimney-sweepers are by no means attractive — but one of these tender novices, blooming through their first nigritude, the maternal washings not quite effaced from the cheek — such as come forth with the dawn, or somewhat earlier, with their little professional notes sounding like the *peep-peep* of a young sparrow; or liker to the matin lark should I pronounce them, in their aërial ascents not seldom anticipating the sunrise?"

By restating the ideas of this sentence in short words of native origin, one sees how much the flavor of it is dependent on just the words which Lamb has chosen. In a simple native vocabulary one would miss the occasional playful contrast between the loftiness of the diction and the lowliness of the subject, which lends it its chief charm.

Another advantage which the language has in its learned borrowed words consists in the fact that it can thus give to scientific objects and ideas names which have not been traditionally attached to other objects and ideas, and which have not acquired through long use a group of connotations and meanings which the scientific word should not have. Thus, the word *zoölogy*, a compound word of Greek origin, according to the meaning of its

elements might be translated literally as "life-lore," a meaning which is decidedly too wide for zoölogy, that science being concerned only with the forms of animal life. So also "star-lore" as a name for astronomy is not a good name, since it connotes a great many popular notions and astrological superstitions that astronomy is not concerned with. The word *inoculate* means a very definite process of modern medicine. Etymologically it comes from Latin *in-*, the preposition, compounded with the noun *oculus*, "eye," also "bud of a plant." Its original meaning in English was to graft by budding, from which the meaning of imparting the germs of a disease for the purpose of preventing the disease is a metaphorical derivation. In Modern English, however, *inoculate* is a word with a single, specific value, the best kind of word that science could have. And so often it would be extremely difficult to find simple native words as names for scientific ideas that would not connote either more or less than it was necessary to express.

Borrowed words, being without the connotations which come of long and familiar use, can often be employed for new ideas with less danger of prejudice or misunderstanding than the native words of the vocabulary. Thus it is an advantage to have the word "conductor" to name the person in command of a train, the corresponding English word "leader" not answering the purpose, and "captain" being limited to the commander of a ship. So also we may speak of a "regent" of a university, for example, whereas the word "ruler" would imply a kind of authority not intended. Manufacturers of commercial products have seen the value of this use of foreign words, and frequently avoid prejudice against their wares

merely by giving strange names for familiar objects. Thus the product known as "cottolene," a substitute for lard made from the cotton seed, means simple "cotton oil." Other examples taken from the names of food-stuffs are cited above. Sometimes, however, the use of a big word for a familiar idea or object is due merely to false modesty or affectation, as when one speaks of a fee as an *honorarium*, or of wages as *salary* or *emolument*. Just when wages reach the dignity of being properly called *salary* is doubtless a matter of opinion; but each word has its proper place, and the fault of using either for the other is equally great. It is hardly necessary to speak of a barber as a "tonsorial artist." And all perhaps except the proprietor will agree that the sign "Horse-shoeing Parlours," which for many years adorned the window of a New York blacksmith's shop, is a little more elegant than the occasion required.

On the other hand, it is certain that the large Latin element in the English vocabulary is the source of some danger and often of weakness in the use of the English language. In the first place, there is the danger of losing the sense of an intimate knowledge of the meaning of words. Borrowed words often do not have the familiar associations, the certainty of effect, and the precision and exactness of meaning which native words are likely to have.[1] Often they seem not to be completely assimi-

[1] English in this respect does not compare favorably with German. "There is nothing which cannot be expressed in German by a native word, homely, picturesque, appealing straight to the intelligence alike of learned and unlearned. The phraseology of abstract thought is concrete here [i. e., in German]; it is also of native growth, not imported from Greek or Latin. Instead of 'incarnation,' Germans speak of *Fleischwerden* or *Verfleischung*. Instead of 'relation,' 'definition,' they use *Verhältniss*, *Bestimmung;* instead of 'concept,' *Begriff*. Some of their philosophical ex-

lated, and are thus used with a looseness and vagueness not characteristic of the native words. A familiar instance is the word *aggravate* (from Latin *ad* and *gravis*), which etymologically and in good literary use means "to make worse," but which colloquially, and perhaps carelessly, tends to be used, especially in the form *aggravating*, in the vaguer and more general sense of "annoy." Likewise, *incisive* is a word which should have a clear and specific meaning, but which again is often used in such general senses as "correct," "appropriate," "to the point." Other instances are *predicament*, used as the equivalent of "plight"; *oblivious*, strictly "forgetful," used in the sense of "unobservant" or "disregardful of," as in "oblivious of his presence," meaning "not having observed his presence" (Thomas Nelson Page), or "oblivious to the cold wind" (*Saturday Evening Post*). The word *stupendous* is often used as though it meant simply "large"; and *unique*, which strictly should mean "single," "the only one of its kind," frequently degenerates into vague meanings like "strange," "excellent," or "ingenious," as in "quite a unique collection of books" (*Pall Mall Gazette*); "the ——church gave a unique entertainment last night." The word *balance* becomes equivalent to "remainder" in "After August you may expect cool weather for the balance of the Summer." The general sense of "severe"

pressions, such, for instance, as *Weltanschauung* [literally world beholding, i. e., philosophy of life], display an inimitable aptitude. Even the terms of physical science are not remote from common life. *Schwefelsäure* explains itself more easily than Acidus Sulphuricus [i. e., sulphuric acid]." Symonds, *Essays, Speculative and Suggestive*, Vol. I, p. 313. For further discussion of the same point, see *Educational Review*. March, 1907, pp. 231–233.

is often given to the word *exemplary*, as in "Their punishment was swift and exemplary"; in careful use, however, the word means "exemplifying," "furnishing an example." So also the word *condign*, which should mean "deserved," "merited," is often used in vague senses of "heavy," "severe," as in "They visited him with condign punishment." An educated person, one of the editors of a large city newspaper, once remarked to the author that he was "impervious to riding backwards in trains," meaning that he was not unpleasantly affected by it. The poster of a land-improvement company advertised the "sale of well-situated and *eligible* properties." The use of *primitive* in the sense merely of "early," and of *universal* in the sense of "common" or "widespread," is often found even in somewhat scholarly writing. More popular is the usage of the man who "wishes to relate a circumstance that occurred," meaning he wishes to tell something that happened. In his next sentence this man would probably say that this "circumstance" was "phenomenal," when he meant only that it was strange or remarkable. The word *temperate* has practically lost its proper meaning in the phrase "strictly temperate," used of a person who is a total abstainer. Several years ago the general post-office sent out a placard for display in local post-offices, stating that registered letters "require the name of the sender to be endorsed on the face of the envelope."[1] Literally, to endorse a thing on its face is a contradiction in terms. The word in the placard had weakened to the meaning merely "to write" or "inscribe."

There is, therefore, always this danger of using more

[1] Tucker, *Our Common Speech*, p. 30.

or less unfamiliar words in vague and indefinite senses when they should have, and in the best use of the language do have, definite and specific senses, the danger of thinking and speaking in loose and general terms instead of in the exactly fitting terms. Closely related to this is an abuse of the language already mentioned which the young writer is likely to be guilty of, that is, the use of words for themselves alone. There are so many "fine" words, so many learned words, in the English vocabulary, that one is sometimes in danger of becoming enamored of words for their own sake, of using them because they sound well, even tho they mean nothing, or are entirely inappropriate to what one is speaking or writing about. This use of big words is given in works on composition the ironical name of "fine writing." Stylistically the use of "fine" words is bad English because it takes words which have their right and appropriate places and uses them where they do not belong. Such methods are comparable to those of a painter who should try to paint a pink flower by using his most brilliant crimson color. He not only does not paint his pink flower, but he has no color left when he wishes to produce his strongest effects. As has been stated, it is usually the inexperienced writer who is liable to fall into this error, the best corrective of which is to observe the ineffectiveness of such English upon any reader whose good opinion is worth having. To persist in the use of "fine" words out of their proper places is to convict one's self of insensibility to the effects produced by language, and one who is always striving to be fine succeeds only in being cheap, tawdry, and vulgar.

To know when not to use the big word in English is,

therefore, one of the best safeguards a writer can have. Indeed, it may be set down as a rule: Never use a long word when a shorter one will do as well. The opposite tendency, that is, to use as many and as long words as you can, has been well described by the novelist Barrie in his satire on what he calls "newspaper English." A candidate is supposed to be up for an examination in journalism, and one of the questions asked is, how to translate the following sentence into "newspaper English": "The house was soon on fire; much sympathy is expressed with the sufferers." The answer to the question is this: "In a moment the edifice was enveloped in shooting tongues of flame: the appalling catastrophe has plunged the whole street into the gloom of night."[1] Lowell, in the Introduction to the Second Series of *Biglow Papers* has a similar set of phrases, one being of the old style and the other of the new style of newspaper-writing. Thus the old style phrase, "A great crowd came to see," becomes in the new style, "A vast concourse was assembled to witness." "Man fell" is translated in the new style into "Individual was precipitated"; and "Sent for the doctor" becomes "Called into requisition the services of the family physician." For the purposes of satire, Barrie and Lowell have of course given somewhat exaggerated, tho none the less instructive, examples of "fine writing." But "newspaper English" is merely our modern cant term for a tendency of English style that has been present ever since the days of Caxton. The English of newspapers is not always bad. Indeed, a fair case may be made for the opinion that it is more generally good than bad. The

[1] J. M. Barrie, *When a Man 's Single.*

English of a reputable city paper is usually direct, straightforward, standing in close relation to the fact which it narrates. Through the inexperience of editors and reporters the writing of the newspapers may often be bombastic and otherwise inadequate; but these faults are of course not greater than that of the second-rate author whose style is "literary" at the expense of directness and sincerity. That the problem of style in English with respect to the Latinized vocabulary is essentially the same, whether we look at it from the point of view of "newspaper English," of literary style, or of conversation, is indicated by the well-known anecdote of Dr. Johnson, recorded by Boswell. The little story shows clearly the vicious tendency of mind which every English writer has to struggle against. Dr. Johnson, according to Boswell, was speaking of Buckingham's satirical play, *The Rehearsal*, and said, "It has not wit enough to keep it sweet," adding after a moment's reflection, "It has not vitality enough to preserve it from putrefaction."

VII

ENGLISH GRAMMAR

1. Modern English Grammar. The word grammar, as it is understood by the scientific student of language, is a term of wide inclusion. The grammar of a language, in the broadest sense, includes a discussion of all the facts of the language, — sounds, inflections, syntax, excepting only vocabulary. Indeed, many scientific grammars never get beyond the consideration of sounds and inflections. There is, however, a less general and more popular sense of the word grammar, which is the meaning intended in its use in the present chapter. This is a use of the word which makes it practically equivalent in meaning to correct syntax. We say a person speaks grammatically when he uses such syntax as is accepted as standard use, and he speaks ungrammatically when he does violence to standard custom.

In modern times the tendency of grammar in this sense has been towards an increasing rigidity in the grammatical system. This applies both to written and to spoken English. In both, the limits of permissible variation in usage are narrower to-day than they ever have been before. The custom of the language has tended to establish one "standard" or "correct" form for each grammatical category, and then to adhere to this form. The difference between present and earlier usage can be seen by comparing Modern English with

the English of Shakspere. In Modern English we have, for example, only one form for the third plural present of verbs. Shakspere, however, tho he generally used what we now regard as the standard form, could also form plurals in *-s*, as in *Tempest*, V, i, 16: "His tears runs down his beard." He also formed third plurals in *-en*, as in *Midsummer-Night's Dream*, II, i, 56:

> And then the whole quire hold their hips and laugh,
> And *waxen* in their mirth.

And occasionally we find third plurals in *-th*. Shakspere thus had four ways of forming his third plurals, and these various forms he was at liberty to choose from apparently much as the need of the moment impelled him. A similar freedom exists with respect to many other grammatical categories. These various forms are generally historical, but where later English has chosen one of a number of historical forms to the exclusion of the rest, earlier English frequently employs several different forms side by side.[1] Sometimes the discarded earlier form of expression persists in Modern English, but is regarded as characteristic of the popular or vulgar speech. Thus the double comparative is now frequently heard in the speech of the uneducated and of children; in Shakspere, as in *Merchant of Venice*, IV, i, 251, "How much more elder art thou than thy looks," it was a construction in as good standing as our so-called "correct" single comparative. In vulgar English we also have the verb *learn* used transitively. In Elizabethan English *learn*

[1] Attention has been called above (see pp. 89 ff.) to the earlier use of the two forms of the pronoun *thou* and *you*, Modern English having limited itself, to its own disadvantage, almost entirely to the second form.

could be either intransitive or transitive, an illustration of the latter use being found in the King James translation of the Bible, Psalm cxix, 66: "O learn me true understanding and knowledge."

It is interesting, also, to compare the standards of spoken English of earlier periods with that of Modern English. For this purpose the comedies of the seventeenth and early eighteenth centuries offer abundant material. The dialog in these comedies is very realistic, coming as near to being an actual transcript of the speech and manners of its times as English literature has ever done. Perhaps, also, no later period of English literature has equaled this dialog in its vivacity, its ease, and its truthfulness. Yet the characters, even when we use for illustration only such as represent educated and cultivated persons, are very free indeed in their treatment of the King's English. In the works of Sir George Etherege occur such constructions as the following: *'Tis them; It must be them; It may be him; let you and I*, and *let thee and I; all you'll ha' me*, for "all you will have me."[1] In Farquhar's *Beaux Stratagem*, Act II, we have the following: *Then I, Sir, tips me the Verger with half a crown.* Frequently the same author uses abbreviations like *a'n't we*, or *a'n't I*, for the full forms *are not we* and *am not I.* The full form for *I have not* is contracted into *I han't.* A few further illustrations may be cited from the comedies of Vanbrugh. In a passage of serious prose, one of his prefaces,[2] we find forms like the following: *they'll, I'm,*

[1] The Works of Sir George Etherege, ed. A. Wilson Verity, London, 1888.

[2] *Vanbrugh*, ed. W. C. Wood, Vol. I, pp. 7–9.

't was, find 'em. These, of course, are common enough in Modern English colloquial speech, but are now practically never used in written style. In the dialog of the comedies themselves the following may be noted: *'T is well, admit 'em; a purpose*, for "on purpose"; *on 't*, for "on it"; *These shoes an't ugly, but they don't fit me; I han't*, for "I have n't"; *don't* as third singular present, frequently; *'twixt you and I; in these kind of matters; ben't*, for "be not"; *by who*, for "by whom"; *sha't*, for "shalt"; *blow'd*, for the preterite of the verb; *with my Lord Rake and I; but was ye never in love, sir? nor is it me he exposes.* Many of these usages are such as exist to-day in the popular speech. They are not cited here as indicating a low general tone of culture in the comedies from which they are taken. On the contrary, conversation was never more brisk and effective than it is in these comedies; wit and satire have never been expressed more certainly than here. The examples have been cited merely to show the change which has come over English speech. Conversation now tends to be more precise and formal. Mere correctness or regularity counts with many people for more than it formerly did. That there has been, however, a corresponding gain in vivacity, lightness, and spontaneity, one would hesitate to say.

2. **Inflectional Change.** With the setting up of a hard and fast rigid system of grammar, naturally the tendencies towards inflectional change, which are so characteristic of earlier periods of English, have been almost completely checked. The most important contemporary change is that which is affecting the subjunctive mood. Practically, the only construction in

Modern English in which the subjunctive is in living, natural use, is in the condition contrary to fact, "If I were you, I should n't do it." Elsewhere, altho it may still be employed with some subtle distinctions of thought, there is always a trace of consciousness in its use; it has more or less literary or archaic or affected flavor. It seems likely, therefore, with the continuance of the present tendencies, that the subjunctive as a distinctive inflectional form will disappear, except, perhaps, in the one construction noted. Even here, however, the indicative form is used in a surprisingly large number of instances in good modern authors. A few examples may be cited: If I *was* Cadogan, I would have a peerage for this day's work (Thackeray); It poured all night, as if the sky *was* coming down (Matthew Arnold); I think if I *was* beginning again, I should begin with a serious study of Paracelsus (Life and Letters of Dean Church); I should feel more sympathy with Germany if it *was* only a question of its being welded together (ibid.).[1] Such usages, which seem indeed perfectly natural, may make one doubt whether the subjunctive will be able to maintain itself even in this last stronghold of the condition contrary to fact. The feeling for the natural use of the subjunctive being thus largely obscured or lost, one finds it occasionally where it is appropriate by no test either of past or present use, as in the following: "Herrick, devout worshipper of his pagan saint though he *were*, has left hardly a phrase which is not sweet with his own dainty country melody" (B. Wendell, *The Temper of the Seventeenth Century*, p. 149). The writer

[1] See Smith, "The Indicative in an Unreal Condition," *Modern Philology*, V, 361–364 (January, 1908), for these and numerous other examples.

of this sentence did not mean to say that Herrick was not a worshiper of his pagan saint; apparently he uses the subjunctive here as result of that confusion of mind which often arises from a vague consciousness of something to be desired or avoided, and which often as not leads one to choose the thing to be avoided.

Occasional variation in the principal parts of verbs is also to be observed. The principal parts of *get* are *get*, *got*, *got*, or *gotten*. Neither *got* nor *gotten* is historically the correct form for the past participle, which should be *geten*. But the vowels of the past participle and of the past tense, as frequently happened, have been leveled under one form; and in the case of *got* as past participle, the leveling has been extended to the *-en* ending. The form *gotten* is often criticised as an Americanism, and it is undoubtedly a more general American use than British. The authentic story is told of an American who sent a telegram to a friend saying that he had gotten tickets for the theater that night, which the British operator transmitted "Have got ten tickets for the theater to-night," to the confusion of the ten when they came to occupy two seats. But it has already been pointed out that the *-en* ending is historically correct. It is supported, moreover, by the forms *forgotten*, *begotten*, *ill-gotten*, etc. Unless one arbitrarily elevates one section of English usage to the position of standard there seems to be no reason why the form *gotten* should not be allowed to exist. It is as natural in that word as are such past participles as *driven*, *ridden*, *written*, etc. There are some constructions, however, in which the form *got* is the only one in customary use. We say "I 've got to go," never "I 've gotten to go," as the British

critic sometimes asserts. There is of course no reason why *got* should not be used as the past participle of the verb when the natural custom of the language calls for it — and the same may be said of *gotten*.

The past participle of the verb *drink* is variously given as *drank* and *drunk*. Historically *drunk* is the better form, following the class of *begin*, *began*, *begun*; *sing*, *sang*, *sung*; *run*, *ran*, *run*, and other verbs. The form *drunk*, however, seems to be objected to because it suggests the adjective use of the word. In spite of this, the weight of usage still favors the form *drunk* as past participle. Altho there is considerable uncertainty in the popular speech with respect to the forms of a number of past tenses, the past of *blow* being often made *blowed*, of *begin* being made *begun*, of *catch* being made *catched*, etc., such forms are now considered as gross errors in the standard or correct speech. Where formerly there was liberty of choice, as, for example, *began* or *begun*, for the past tense of *begin*, the custom of standard Modern English has recognized only one correct form. Attention may be called, however, to the fact that the strict rule of the grammarians is not always followed in practice by good speakers and writers. The past tense of the verb *lie* is conventionally *lay*; but the form *laid* is also in very general use, especially among persons not held in restraint by academic traditions. An illustration may be cited: "Apparently the bear *laid* in wait beside the game trails, along which the deer wandered" (Roosevelt, *Hunting the Grisly*, p. 60). The same diversity of use exists with respect to the past tense of *dive* as *dived* or *dove*. The former is the conventionally "correct" form, but the latter, following the analogy of

drive, *drove*, *ride*, *rode*, etc., is a natural formation and, in spoken use at least, is perhaps more frequently heard than the former. An example may be cited from the source just quoted: "The little animal . . . struck out at him like an angry cat, *dove* into the bushes, and was seen no more" (Roosevelt, *Hunting the Grisly*, p. 111).

Modern grammar has attempted to regulate according to a strict system the use of *shall* and *will* in future and other verb-phrases, but not with complete success. It is not the present writer's intention to elaborate a detailed statement of the rules for the so-called "correct" use of these words. Many such have been given, all very complicated, all more or less different, and all colored by the theories of the grammarian or rhetorician from whom they have proceeded. Beyond the simple rule that *shall* is used, according to the theory of formal grammar, in the first person, present tense, singular and plural, for the expression of simple futurity, and *will* in the second and third persons, present tense, singular and plural, for the same purpose, and that *should* and *would* are respectively used in the past tense, where *shall* and *will* are used in the present, it is not necessary to go. The other uses, for example *will* in the first person and *shall* in the second and third, are generally unmistakably determined by what the speaker wishes to express; they are, moreover, so much colored by the mood of the moment, the distinctions of meaning are often so subtle, that it is hardly possible to reduce these to a practical systematic statement, even if it were desirable. If grammar were, as it is indeed sometimes assumed to be, a strictly logical system which could be worked out in the quiet of the study, and then imposed upon the speakers of the

language, the elaboration of a complicated set of rules for the use of *shall* and *will* might be worth while. But if grammar is, as we assume it to be, the statement of the usage of the people who employ the language in the practical and effective communication of thought, any theoretical dogmatizings as to the way in which the words *shall* and *will*, or any others, *ought* to be used, will be worse than useless. If we observe the facts of the actual usage of *shall* and *will* in speech we shall find the greatest diversity. We shall find that there is a body of careful speakers who, either through persistent instruction in formal grammar or through tradition derived from such instruction, tend to use these words consistently in their conventionally recognized standard forms. In certain restricted communities the standard usage has thus become to a considerable extent the natural popular custom. With the great majority of speakers, however, with those who must be counted as the average, intelligent population of the country, the greatest freedom prevails. Indeed one may say that where a strong academic standardizing influence has not been brought to bear, *I will* is as generally used for the future as *I shall*. In the face of these facts it will obviously not do simply to dismiss *I will* as "vulgar" and "incorrect." It is incorrect only according to the system of theoretical, not of practical, grammar, and the notion of its incorrectness is the comparatively recent outgrowth of the modern grammarian's striving after a rigid regulation of the forms of speech. The simple fact seems to be that this is one of the instances in which the conventional grammar, having raised a special and not universal usage to the position of standard, has not yet succeeded in imposing

its rules upon the speech even of those who in general follow the rules of conventional or standard grammar. Whether in the end it will succeed in doing so, it is not easy to foresee. At present it seems just as likely that conventional grammar will change its rules, as that the great body of those who now use the "incorrect" forms will change their practice. It is especially difficult in this instance to impose the standard forms on colloquial speech, because through the habit of contraction the feeling for all distinction between the forms is largely obscured. Thus *I'll*, *you'll*, *he'll* may as well stand for *I will*, etc., as for *I shall*, etc. The safest guide, therefore, in the use of *shall* and *will* is, as ever, the guide of practical use. In practical use it will be observed that in formal, or literary, or careful English, a somewhat definite "cult" has grown up with respect to the use of these words which is often made, by the followers of it, the test of education, even of refinement. The practical advantage of knowing the rules of this cult, even tho they are to a high degree artificial, is obvious. On the other hand, the observation of the widespread popular usage should prevent one from dogmatizing too positively on the matter of correctness, should even encourage one to a disagreement with the strict law of the formal or literary usage.[1]

[1] The usual statement of the grammarians is that Scotch, Irish, and Americans have great difficulty in acquiring the "faultless" use of *shall* and *will*. This means, of course, that Scotch, Irish, and Americans are incorrect in their use of *shall* and *will* only because they are measured by a British standard. By that standard there are innumerable ways in which American usage would be incorrect. Any one interested in the intricacies of the shall-and-will puzzle may consult the work of Dr. Gerald Molloy, *The Irish Difficulty: Shall and Will*, London, 1897, in which the author has taken two hundred pages in the attempt to lay bare its subtleties.

In the noun the only inflectional changes of importance are those affecting plurals of foreign origin. Here there is more or less tendency to give the foreign plurals the form of English words, with the regular *-s*, *-es* ending of plurals. Thus the plurals of *index*, *appendix*, *focus*, *criterion*, may be either the foreign forms *indices*, *appendices*, *foci*, *criteria*, or better, the English forms *indexes*, *appendixes*, *focuses*, *criterions*. In some words, like *gymnasium*, *bandit*, *cherub*, the English plurals *gymnasiums*, *bandits*, and *cherubs*, instead of *gymnasia*, *banditti*, and *cherubim* (used only with reference to the Biblical cherubim), are the only ones generally used. In general the tendency to substitute English for foreign plurals is one that should be encouraged.

In the instance of the word *data*, a Latin plural from a little used singular *datum*, the strong popular tendency is to take the word as a singular. This tendency is helped by the fact that the word has no corresponding singular in general use. It is consequently understood as a singular, equivalent in meaning to "information," as in the sentence, "This data has been furnished on the understanding that it will not be published." Altho historically inexact, the meaning has become so general among those who employ the word in colloquial speech that it must be regarded as an established usage. There is a similar tendency to use the plural *phenomena* as a singular, upon which a new plural, *phenomenas*, is then formed. This tendency is held well in check, however, by the learned character of the word *phenomenon*; as it becomes more popular, an increasing use of *phenomena* as a singular may be expected.[1]

[1] For examples of *phenomena* as a singular and *phenomenas* as plural, see the New English Dictionary under *phenomenon*. On the general topic, see

3. **Word Order.** To take the place of the older method of binding the parts of the sentence together by means of concord in inflectional endings, Modern English, having lost almost all its inflectional endings, has been compelled to substitute instead the order of the words in the sentence. The principles determining the word-order of Modern English are two, first, that ideas shall be expressed in the order of their logical succession; and second, that related ideas shall stand in close proximity to each other. By the first principle English has settled upon an almost invariable succession of the main parts in the structure of the sentence. The main scheme of subject + verb + object is but little obscured by the insertion of modifying parts and is not departed from except in occasional interrogative and exclamatory sentences. In colloquial speech, where the sentences are naturally shorter and simpler than in the more conscious literary style, the simple subject + verb + object structure is almost the only one employed. It is, in fact, the only one that can be employed; for even in sentences in which the forms of the words indicate their cases, for example, *I saw him* and *Him saw I*, that rigid feeling for one set form which is generally characteristic of Modern English permits only the first, or natural, order of words.

Professor Matthews' essay, "The Naturalization of Foreign Words," in *Parts of Speech*, pp. 165–183. In the case of the word *opera*, which is etymologically the plural of the Latin neuter noun *opus*, both the popular and the standard speech accept the plural form as singular, forming a new plural *operas* after the common analogy of English words. Other instances of a similar nature are the word *differentia*, by etymology a Latin singular noun of the first declension, but often used as a plural in English; *insignia*, by etymology a Latin plural but used in English indifferently as singular or plural; and *memoranda*, by etymology a plural, but often used as a singular.

The second principle requiring that related ideas shall be expressed in close proximity to each other is a necessary result of the importance of word-order and of the leading part which logic of situation plays in Modern English. If the interrelations of words in a group are to be determined by the logic of the ideas which they express, naturally those ideas which are closely related must be brought close to each other in expression, since the logical connection would otherwise be obscured by the introduction of extraneous ideas. We thus demand that adjectives stand near their nouns, usually immediately before them; that pronouns stand near their antecedents; that adverbs stand close to their modified words; and that verbs stand as near as possible to the subjects which determine their number and person. In the ordering of phrases and clauses also, the parts must be arranged in the order of their logical sequence. Humorous illustrations (for example, "Piano to rent by a lady with solid mahogany legs") of the result of not heeding this rule abound in the grammars and rhetorics. But the fact that we find such departures from a fixed word-order ludicrous, even when the logic of the situation makes the meaning perfectly clear, as in the above example, shows what a strong hold mere proximity and order of words have acquired in Modern English speech.

This feeling for order of words in some instances comes into conflict with certain traditional grammatical rules. A stock illustration of this is the "split infinitive." It is one of the conservative traditional rules of Modern English grammar that nothing shall stand between the infinitive and its sign *to*. But it is difficult to see the logical justification for this rule. By origin

the sign *to* is a preposition, and the infinitive which follows it is by origin a verbal noun, which, in the inflectional stage of the language, was inflected, like any other noun, for the dative case after its preposition. Moreover, in the similar construction of the infinitive in *-ing* after a preposition, no question is ever raised. If one may say "His plan *for heavily taxing* the people did not meet with approval," why may not one as well say "It is difficult *to quickly convert* these securities into cash"? Parallel to the construction of the split infinitive is a sentence like the following, in which the adverb *now* is made part of the prepositional phrase: "Such a periodical is what I have been seeking diligently for now many years." Indeed the principle of Modern English grammar that a modifying word shall stand as near to the modified word as possible often favors the insertion of an adverb between the infinitive and its sign. Examples of "split infinitive" can of course be found in the writing of good authors. The best writers have always availed themselves of the privilege of placing an adverb before the infinitive when the effective exposition of their thought required it. In contemporary speech the "split infinitive" is most frequently heard in the usage of those speakers who give much attention to the precise definition and expression of their thought, especially lawyers, but who are not too much restrained by the injunctions of the academic grammarian. It is this latter who is mainly responsible for the rigid prohibition against the use of the "split infinitive." Like the rule for the use of *shall* and *will*, this is another of those traditional and theoretical laws which has acquired respect and authority merely because it has been so often

dogmatically stated. By the test of actual use and by the test of the feeling for the Modern English idiom, the "split infinitive" is not only a natural, but often an admirable, form of expression.[1]

Word-order sometimes determines case contrary to the usual rules of grammar. Thus from early times the nominative form of the interrogative pronoun, instead of the grammatical objective, has been used in sentences like "Who do you mean?" Shakspere, in *Coriolanus*, II, i, 8, writes: *Who does the wolf love?* where the context shows that *Who* is to be taken as the object of *love*. Examples are frequent in colloquial English of all later periods. According to the rules of conventional grammar, they are of course simply "incorrect." They violate the rigid rule that the object of a verb must be in the objective case, and the objective case of *who* is *whom*. But is nothing to be said for "Who do you mean?" The justification of the construction, so far as it goes, is to be found in the explanation of its origin. The type-form of the English sentence, as has been stated, follows the scheme of subject + verb + object. The general feeling thus comes to be that the word which precedes the verb is the subject word, or at least the subject form, and that which follows, the object; and it is an instinctive tendency to make all sentences adapt themselves to this typical structure. Naturally enough, therefore, *who*, when it comes first in interrogative sentences, is given the subject form, not only in those many sentences in which it is the grammatical subject, as in "Who called

[1] For a full discussion, with numerous examples, of the split infinitive, see Lounsbury, *The Standard of Usage in English*, pp. 240–268; Hall, *American Journal of Philology* III, No. 9, 1882; Borst, *Englische Studien*, XXXVII, 386–393.

yesterday?" but also in sentences in which it is the grammatical object, as in "Who did you call?" Since this latter construction follows the logical tendency of modern grammar, by that test it is correct; and since, moreover, it is in wide colloquial use, it can be condemned in practice only by the believer in the rigid theoretical system of grammar.

Another instance in which order of words has been influential in determining the form of a case is the construction "It is me." This usage may be said to have fairly won its way, at least into good colloquial speech. Other similar forms, like "It is her, him, them," have perhaps not been quite so successful, altho they follow the same tendency. In these sentences the type-form, subject + verb + object, has caused even the word after the copulative verb to assume the objective form. So strong is this feeling for the objective as the case of all words after the verb that the traditionally correct "It is I" has come to be regarded as too correct, that is, as somewhat pedantic and affected.

An interesting conflict of tendencies arises in such sentences as "I had no expectation of him doing that," or "I had no expectation of his doing that." Both usages are widely current in colloquial speech, altho the rigid grammarian strives to make the forms with the possessive, that is, "of his doing that," the only correct form. This is especially true when the *-ing* word is preceded by a pronoun. Otherwise, even in good literary style, one finds the non-possessive form frequently used, as in the following examples: "This impossibility of one *man producing* work in exactly the same manner as another makes all deliberate attempts at imitation as-

sume the form of parody or caricature" (Symonds, *Essays Speculative and Suggestive*, II, 7); "I can only suggest a reason for the *effect being* so much greater in my own case" (Hudson, *Idle Days in Patagonia*, p. 226); "he points out the necessity of *style being fashioned* to the matter" (G. Gregory Smith, *Elizabethan Critical Essays*, p. xlii); "the fact is that, strictly speaking, there is no such thing as a *language becoming* corrupt" (Lounsbury, *The Standard of Usage*, p. 57); "the negro in New England very likely comes of a free father and grandfather, and the fact of a *negro being* free a generation or two back was pretty sure sign of *his belonging* to the more energetic class of his fellows" (Freeman, *Some Impressions*, p. 148); "there had been a scene between his father and himself, which ended in his *father disinheriting* him" (*New York Times*); "there is something droll in the notion of a *Tax Commissioner being* not too politely bowed out of office" (ibid.); "the shortness of his left leg prevented *him running*" (ibid.); "occasioned by the *latter using* an old school-fellow's privilege" (Jespersen, *Growth and Structure*, p. 237); "the Wagnerites who used to prate about Italian *opera being* dead" (*New York Evening Post*).

The logical origin of the two forms of expression, the one with the possessive, the other with the non-possessive form of noun or pronoun, is not difficult to see. In a sentence like "I was used to him being so excited," the instinctive feeling is that the preposition *to* should be followed by an objective case, "him," especially so since the word which follows "him" is not a simple noun, but that peculiar kind of noun which we call a verbal, a noun that possesses as much the value of verb

as of noun. The sentence is thus adapted to the form of the parallel sentence, "It was usual for him to be so excited," in which both "him" and "to be" are the independent objects of the preposition. On the other hand, when the possessive form is used, "I was used to his being so excited," the verbal value of "being" is in the background, and as its noun value is emphasized, it must logically become the sole object of the preposition and be preceded by a modifying adjective pronoun. On logical grounds, therefore, both constructions are "correct"; but the choice of the construction which one prefers to use depends, of course, not so much upon logic as upon the conventionalized custom of the language. As has been stated, there is a strong academic tendency to regard the form of construction with the objective as popular English, and to elevate the construction with the possessive as the sole standard or correct form of the construction. The examples given above, however, are sufficient to indicate that a hard and fast rule requiring the possessive before the infinitive in *-ing* is not a description of the real facts. There are indeed some instances in which the possessive is never found, some even where it would be impossible idiom. Thus when the noun before the verbal is a plural with the usual *s-* ending, the possessive relation is never indicated by an apostrophe, a fact which shows that there is really no feeling for the possessive relation present in the construction. One could not write *Protestants'* in the following: "This has arisen in good measure from Protestants not knowing the force of theological terms" (Newman, *Apologia*, p. 352); or *authorities'* in "She laughed at the idea of the authorities holding her" (*New*

York Times); or *feats* in "I have known of these feats being performed several times" (Roosevelt, *Hunting the Grisly*, p. 121). In a sentence like "We had not thought of *that being* his real occupation," a possessive form *that's* is out of the question; the pronoun must be in the common or non-possessive form. It seems then that only when the verbal is preceded by a personal pronoun or the name of a person is there any strong feeling that the possessive form is necessary. The hostility towards a sentence like the following, "History has no record of a *city existing* under such circumstances," is decidedly less than it is towards a sentence like, "No one ever heard of *Lincoln making* such a speech." But sentences like this second are common enough even in good writers, and the dogmatic rule of the grammarian, here as ever, must be taken with liberal allowance.

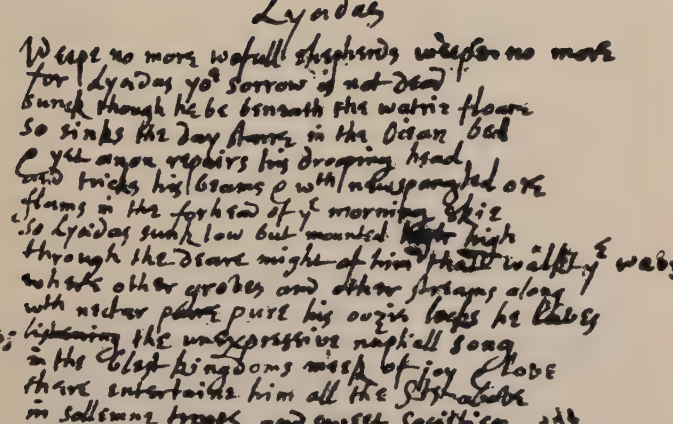
4. **Concord.** The triumph of the logic of meaning over the strict rules of formal grammar is frequently illustrated by the concord of verb and subject in Modern English. A sentence, for example, like "The whole car were laughing," is good English, altho it contains a singular subject and a plural verb. By "car," however, one of course means "all the people in the car," and this idea has more value in determining the number of the verb than the singular form of the mere word. Likewise we may have two related ideas, connected by the coördinating *and*, which stand as the subject of a singular verb because they are thought of as practically one idea. An illustration is Kipling's line, "The shouting and the tumult dies." According to strict grammar, we should of course have "die"; but again the logic of ideas rises superior to the rules of formal grammar. The same

principle applies to the varying treatment of collective nouns. We may say "The jury were of one mind," in which the component parts of the jury is the thought uppermost in the mind; or we may say "The jury was selected without difficulty," where the jury is thought of as a whole. A plural verb is often used in constructions in which we have a singular subject to which is united a prepositional phrase which has all the value of a coördinate subject. Thus the following sentence is part of the inscription on a tablet recently erected in memory of the novelist Blackmore: *This tablet with the window above are a tribute of admiration*, etc. This construction is very old, being found abundantly as far back as Old English. Again it is the logic of the situation which determines the concord, "This tablet with the window" being logically, tho not grammatically, equivalent to "This tablet and the window."

In a similar way a plural demonstrative adjective is often used before the singular noun, in constructions like "These kind of apples are hard to get," or "Those sort of people are not often met with." This is very general colloquial usage, and sufficient examples may be cited from good authors to show that it is not impossible literary usage. Again it is the general logic of the situation which determines the plural forms *these*, *those*. The words *kind* and *sort* are themselves collective nouns and imply the idea of plurality. They are, moreover, usually followed in this idiom by the plural of the whole of which the word *kind* or *sort* is a part, as in the above examples, *of apples* and *of people*. The predominant thought of the whole group of words is consequently a plural idea, and the demonstrative naturally takes the

plural form. The grammar of such constructions is determined by the logic of general situation, not by the laws of formal concord.

Another familiar illustration of the importance of general situation as compared with grammatical concord is to be found in the construction known as "dangling" or "unrelated participle." The strict rule of the grammars and rhetorics is that the participle must not be used without definite and expressed indication of the word which it modifies. With unskilled writers this is a safe and necessary rule, since often ridiculous blunders are made by neglect to follow it. The loose construction is often used also when the writer has not taken the trouble to think out clearly what he has to say. A sentence like "Standing on the hilltop the valley stretched away for miles" is bad English, not merely because the participle "standing" has no word to modify, but because the general situation is not adequately expressed. At the same time it must be acknowledged that as a rigid rule admitting no exceptions, the prohibition against the dangling participle is also a dogma of the theoretical grammarian which is contrary to actual practice. Sentences like the following from Carlyle, "Speaking in quite unofficial language, what is the net purpose and upshot of war?" can be readily paralleled, not only in colloquial speech, but also in the more correct literary style. The following is from Robert Louis Stevenson, whom one can hardly regard as a careless writer: "Thence, *looking* up and however far, each fir stands separate against the sky no bigger than an eyelash, and all together lend a fringed aspect to the hills" (*Silverado Squatters*). Such sentences are indeed quite in harmony with the


Lycidas

Weepe no more wofull shepherds weepe no more
for Lycidas yor sorrow is not dead
sunck though he be beneath the watrie floore
So sinks the day starre in the Ocean bed
& yet anon repairs his drooping head
and tricks his beams & with new spangled ore
flames in the forhead of ye morning skie
So Lycidas sunk low but mounted high
through the dear might of him that walkt ye wave
where other groves and other streams along
with nectar pure his oozie locks he laves
& hears the unexpressive nuptiall song
in the blest kingdoms meek of joy & love
there entertains him all the Saints above
in solemne troops, and sweet societies
that sing, & singing in their glorie move
and wipe the teares for ever from his eyes
now Lycidas the shepherds weepe no more
henceforth thou art the Genius of ye shore
in thy large recompence & shalt be good
to all that wander in that perilous flood
thus sang the uncouth swaine to th' oakes & rills
while the still morne went out with sandals grey
he touch't the tender stops of various quills
with eager thought warbling his Doric lay
and now the Sun had stretcht out all the hills
and now was dropt into the western bay
at last he rose and twitcht his mantle blew
To morrow to fresh woods and pastures new

AUTOGRAPH OF MILTON'S "LYCIDAS," ll. 165–193.
(For description, see Appendix.)

general tendency of English towards contracted and elliptical forms of expression. So long as the meaning is fully conveyed, we do not usually trouble ourselves much about questions of grammatical completeness. It is only when the meaning is obscure, or when some unsuitable grouping of ideas is brought about by the failure to follow the rules of grammar, that we have recourse to the formal rule of grammar to correct the evil. In other words, grammatical correctness is in many instances in Modern English not a positive, not even a necessary, virtue, but merely a safeguard to prevent misleading or inadequate forms of statement.

5. **Meaning and Function.** Attention has already been called to the ease and frequency with which words of one part of speech pass over into another. This again is partly due to the importance of meaning as distinguished from form in Modern English. Since words in Modern English usually stand for ideas, without formal restrictions as to the way these ideas shall be expressed, they easily lend themselves to a great variety of uses. The function, or part of speech, of a word can thus be determined in Modern English only by the logic of its use. The words *out*, *in*, *then* are usually adverbs, but in phrases like "the out voyage," "the in voyage," "In the then condition of my mind" (Dickens), they are plainly adjectives. Similarly the word *so*, in the sentence, "He was poor but honestly so," can hardly be disposed of as an adverb. Its function rather is similar to that of the pronoun, altho the word which it here stands in place of is the adjective "poor," an equivalent form of the sentence being "He was poor but honestly poor." In some instances the loss of older inflectional forms has resulted in a feel-

ing of some uncertainty on the part of the formal grammarians with respect to the functional uses of words. Thus the old dative adverb formed by the addition of the inflectional *-e* to the adjective, by the loss of final *-e* has become exactly like the adjective in form (see above, p. 72). Some grammarians are therefore inclined to regard such constructions as "go slow," as in "The need of going slow in astronomical science we have urged many times on its practitioners" (*New York Times*), or "I can't walk fast," etc., as incorrect, substituting what they regard as the correct adverbial forms, "go slowly," or "I can't walk rapidly." They thus strive to establish a rigid and unequivocal form for adjective and adverb. This, as we have endeavored to point out, is contrary to the spirit of Modern English grammar, which makes logical meaning rather than form the test of value of a word, and if *slow* and *fast* are used as adverbs, they are adverbs and nothing else. By this rule the word "evenings," in the sentence "The library will close evenings at eight o'clock," is a pure adverb, equivalent in meaning to the adverbial prepositional phrase "in the evening." In origin it is derived from an older adverbial genitive in *-es* (a construction which still exists in Modern German), with which in later times was confused the idea of the plural. But logically, and therefore grammatically, its function is adverbial in Modern English whether it is regarded as a singular or a plural, and the construction is to be accepted as a natural idiom of the language. Such adverbial ideas as extent of time and space are also expressed without inflection for adverbial form. Thus "hours" in "I walked two hours," and "miles" in "I walked two miles" are both adverbs. They are some-

times called "adverbial objectives," because this adverbial function was expressed in the Old English period by inflection for the accusative case; but in Modern English there is no thought of case connected with the words, and their function is determinable merely by their logical meaning. In one instance, in the construction "I am going home," we have the word "home" preserved in what was originally a locative case of a noun; but here also the feeling for case has disappeared, and the word is to be regarded simply as an adverb.

Another adverb which in origin is derived from an inflectional form, but which has become even more obscured than those cited, is the adverb *the* in such expressions as "The more the merrier"; "The sooner you do this, the better it will be for you." The word *the* in the inflectional Old English period of the language was, in this construction, an instrumental case of the demonstrative pronoun, its form being þy; in meaning it was equivalent to a prepositional phrase "by this," or "by that." Our Modern English "The more, the merrier" might be paraphrased, therefore, as "more by this, merrier by that," in which of course "by this" and "by that" are adverbial phrases modifying the adjectives "more" and "merrier." From this analysis it will be seen that the word *the* in such constructions as *the more*, etc., since it has the function of an adverb, is to be treated as such, even tho in form it seems very remote from everything that we connect with the idea of adverb. It is not possible to dismiss the construction, as is often done, merely as an "idiom," incapable of analysis. It is an easy but unjustifiable way of evading grammatical difficulties to group them together as idioms, under

standing by that term peculiar, illogical, and inexplicable constructions which have found their way into the language in some mysterious manner beyond the power of man to discover. Idioms of this sort are not found in the English language. There are many constructions which it is difficult to account for on the basis of the traditional, theoretical systems of grammar, but there are no constructions which cannot be accounted for on the grounds of logical development. The term "idiom" is needed for better uses than to serve as a designation for something which does not exist. It is needed to designate those methods of expression which are peculiar to one language as distinguished from another. Thus it is proper to speak of an English, a German, or a French idiom. To write or to speak English idiomatically means to write or speak it with due understanding of and regard for those specific forms of expression by virtue of which English is English as distinguished from all other languages.

An interesting development of Modern English grammar is the extension of the class of copulative verbs. A copulative verb may be defined as a verb of weakened predication or assertion. It serves as a colorless link-word rather than to make a positive declaration. Its commonest, and apparently oldest form, is the verb "to be," which in its most positive significance expresses merely the negative act of existence. Closely related to "to be" are such words as "to become," "to appear," "to seem," etc. Syntactically these copulative verbs have to be put into a class apart from the transitive verbs, because when they are followed by a substantive word, noun or pronoun, this word is in the nominative,

or predicate nominative, case, and also because, unlike the transitive verbs, they may be followed by adjectives, known as predicate adjectives, as in "I am glad," or "He seems happy." It is in this second construction, in cases in which the copulative verb is followed by the predicate adjective, that the extension of its use has occurred. The forms of the verb "to be" have remained the only ones which may be followed by a nominative case of the pronoun. But the number of verbs which may be followed by predicate adjectives has been largely increased. Examples are *turn*, as in "The milk turned sour"; *look*, as in "he looks sad"; *feel*, as in "I feel sick"; *smell*, as in "it smells sweet"; *sound*, as in "the horns sound loud"; *flush*, as in "he flushed red"; and a great many others. Instances occur abundantly in literary English. Jeffries (*The Open Air*) has the following: "There was a coat of fallen needles under the firs an inch thick, and beneath it the dry earth *touched warm*." With the novelist Meredith it has developed almost into a mannerism of style. Almost every page will furnish illustrations, of which one or two from the early pages of his *Vittoria* may be cited: "Luigi's blood *shot purple*"; "In his sight she *looked a dark Madonna*, with the sun *shining bright gold* through the edges of the summer hat." Many of these verbs have quite as much asserting value as most intransitive verbs, and if it were not for the predicative adjectives which accompany them, we might classify them simply as intransitive verbs. That these words which stand after the verbs are true adjectives and not adverbs is determined by our feeling for the logic of the statements. Sentences like "The flower smells sweet" or "The earth touched warm" do

not describe the manner of action of the verb. They are rather equivalent to the paraphrases, "The flower is sweet to the smell," and "The earth was warm to the touch." They combine, therefore, the function of the copulative and the intransitive verb, and are characteristic of Modern English in their vigorous compression of statement. The same feeling for compact, strong expression which leads to the direct formation of verbs from nouns, as, for example, "to bell a cat," instead of the weaker "to put a bell on a cat," or "to house the poor," instead of "to provide houses for the poor," will help to explain also such elliptical and strongly expressive uses of the verb as "The earth touched warm," instead of "The earth was warm to the touch."

6. **Function-Groups.** One result of the loss of inflections in English and the consequent tendency of the words of the language to assume generalized forms, each word becoming a completely independent word-unit, has been the formation of what may be called function-groups. In a completely inflectional language, such things as function-groups would not exist; for the language would have for every grammatical function which it wished to express an appropriate inflectional form. In English, however, many of the grammatical functions can be expressed only by means of groups of words. Thus English has no true inflectional passive voice, and has not had any since the earliest recorded periods of its existence. The passive voice has to be expressed by a group of words, consisting of a form of the verb "to be" united to the past participle. Likewise most of the tenses in Modern English, e. g., *I have gone*, *I had gone*, *I shall go*, etc., have to be expressed by function-groups,

not by inflections. If we were strictly logical, we should write the parts of a function-group together as one word, since it has but a single value; or at least we should connect them by hyphens, *I had-gone*, *I shall-go*, etc. As a matter of fact we do this in some instances, but in others we do not. We write "window-sill," "typewriter," "office-boy," etc., with or without hyphens, but exactly similar groups are not united at all, as, for example, "a bank president," "the city editor," "a carpet factory," etc. The usage of the printed and written language in this respect is altogether inconsistent. Certain compound prepositions, like *into*, *beside*, etc., are written together as one word, but others are not only not written together, but may not be written together, such as *out of*, *on to*, *alongside of*, *because of*, by reason of the artifical distinction established by conventional usage. This diversity of printed and written forms is, however, purely accidental and external. The function of *out of* and *into* are identical in the sentence, "He fell out of the boat into the water," even tho they do differ in form. A few further illustrations may be cited. The words *head on*, in "The ships struck head on" is an adverbial function-group modifying *struck*. In the sentence, "The shores were steep to all around" (Conrad, *Nostromo*, Chapter I) *steep to* is a predicate adjective. The verb in the sentence, "It is all over with me" is the function-group *is over*, which is modified by the adverb *all*. The value of *burst open* as a function-group is clearly brought out in the following sentence, where the words are once used as a verb and then as an adjective: "The cottonfields themselves when the bolls *burst open*, seem almost as if whitened by snow and the

red and white flowers, interspersed among the *burst-open* pods, make the whole field beautiful" (Roosevelt, "In the Louisiana Canebrakes," *Scribner's Magazine*, January, 1908). The words *thirty odd*, in "I found thirty odd volumes on the shelves," are an adjective modifying volumes, exactly equivalent in value to thirty-three, or thirty-five, etc. In the sentence "I will look into it," the verb is the group *will look into;* in "The ball went flying through the air," the verb is the group *went flying;* in "He ran up a bill," the verb is *ran up*. Many other illustrations might be cited, but those given are sufficient to show that not every separate word by itself has grammatical function in Modern English grammar, but that words must often be taken together as constituting function-groups. In such cases it is contrary to the idiom of the language to try to analyze the groups into their constituent parts so as to give every word, standing alone, a clearly defined structural value.

So far has this feeling for the function-group developed that often we have a kind of group inflection. Thus in a phrase like "The governor of California's policy," the possessive inflection should strictly go with *governor;* the whole phrase, however, the *governor of California*, is felt to belong together and to serve as a possessive modifier of *policy*, and the inflection is consequently attached to the group as a whole. This use is capable of almost indefinite extension. In groups of two or more words in names or titles, as, for example, *Beaumont and Fletcher's Works*, the *Chicago and Alton's rolling stock*, etc., the possessive inflection ends the group. In two appositive nouns the possessive inflection is added only to the second, as in "We stopped at Mr. Barton,

the clergyman's house, for a drink of water." In popular speech a sentence like "That 's the man we saw yesterday's hat" is not only quite intelligible but is felt to be quite idiomatic. It is equivalent to "That is the hat of the man whom we saw yesterday." This, however, is very formal English, the phrase "the hat of the man" being unusual spoken idiom; one would more naturally say "That is the man's hat whom," etc. In the sentence as first given the main structural part of the sentence is simply "That is the hat"; the rest of the sentence is felt to be merely a possessive modifier of *hat*, and the mark of the possessive relation is consequently added to the last word of the group preceding the modified word.

An instance of artificial logic applied to a related construction is to be found in the affected use of the phrase *somebody* or *anybody else's*. The normal idiom in the use of this phrase gives it the form cited. It is a function-group with the value of an indefinite pronoun, and the possessive inflection is naturally appended to the last element in the group. With certain theoretical and conscious speakers and grammarians, however, the phrase is given the form *anybody's else*. This is neither general custom nor is it good logic. To say *His opinion is as good as anybody's else*, or to speak of *anybody's else policy* would be as unidiomatic as to say *the governor's policy of California*. The use of the form *anybody's else* is a good illustration of the danger of placing the authority of individual and theoretical logic above the authority of general custom in language.

7. **Mixed Syntax.** Occasional questions of grammar arise in which the source of the difficulty lies in the

mixing of two forms of construction. A familiar illustration is the prohibited "and which" and "and whom" construction. According to the strict rule, *which* and *whom* should be connected with a preceding clause by the coördinating conjunction *and* only when a real coördination is intended, that is, when two relative clauses of the same syntax are to be coördinately united. Colloquially, however, and to a considerable extent in literary style as well, the coördinating *and* is used to connect a single relative clause with its main clause. The following sentence from a newspaper report of a recent speech of the King of Portugal will serve as illustration: "I thank your Majesty for the cordial reception you have given us, and which we appreciate." Another illustration may be cited from Borrow (*Bible in Spain*, II, 336), in whose writings the construction abounds: "The principal personage, and to whom all the rest paid much deference, was a tall man of about forty." Such constructions are really a confusion of two different forms of expression. From the two forms, "I thank your Majesty for the cordial reception you have given us, which we appreciate," and "I thank your Majesty for the cordial reception you have given us, and we appreciate it," is fashioned a contamination of both, "I thank your Majesty for the cordial reception you have given us, and which we appreciate." The sentence from Borrow is made up of the two forms, "The principal personage, to whom all the rest," etc., and "The principal personage and the one to whom," etc., or "The principal personage and to him," etc. From the point of view of clear definition of thought, there is consequently good ground for

objecting to the lax use of the *and which*, *and whom* construction.

Another illustration of mixed syntax is to be found in the customary use of the preposition *to*, *into* after a verb of rest, as "Have you ever been to Chicago?" The usual preposition after forms of the verb *to be* is *at*, after verbs of motion, *to*, *into*. In sentences like the one cited, however, the verb *to be* is not the mere verb of rest, but has almost acquired the value of a verb of motion. In other instances the construction does not seem quite so natural. The following from a recent magazine article: "By one o'clock I was back to Mr. Rogers' office," would be more customarily expressed "By one o'clock I was back at Mr. Rogers' office," or "By one o'clock I came back to Mr. Rogers' office." The phrase "have never been into it," occurs in the following sentence (Henry James, *Transatlantic Sketches*, p. 237): "The church is lighted only by a few glimmering tapers, and as I have never been into it but at this hour, I know nothing of its interior aspect." We might naturally say "I have never been in it," or "I have never gone into it," but "I have never been into it" seems to be an unidiomatic blending of both forms of expression.

An old rule of the formal grammars and rhetorics which is now happily passing out of existence ran to the effect that sentences must not end with prepositions. The rule was made in face of the fact that in actual speech and in writing sentences do end with prepositions, and historically, from the Old English period down, always have ended with prepositions in certain constructions. The shifting of the preposition to the

end of the sentence merely has the effect of emphasizing its adverbial value. In sentences containing a relative clause with the relative pronoun omitted, the sentence cannot end otherwise than with a preposition, as in "Where is the man you are to play with?" or "This is the house I was born in." But the old rule is perhaps too far gone to require more than a passing notice. A rule of similar origin, which is also less frequently met with now than formerly, relates to the pronoun to be used in referring to the indefinite *one*. The old rule ran to the effect that *one* must always be referred to by itself or one of its forms. By rule the following sentence would be very elegant English: "If one should do that, one would soon find that one's reputation would suffer." In natural usage, however, *one* may be and is referred to by *he*, and, in the possessive, by *his*. Another artificial rule more honored in the breach than in the observance is that which requires the coördinate particles *so . . . as* when the sentence is negative, but *as . . . as* when the sentence is affirmative. Thus we must say "He is as tall as I am," but "He is not so tall as I am." No valid argument can be found for this rule either in logic or in actual use, and it seems to owe its existence merely to that passion for subtle and dogmatically defined distinctions which generally characterizes the theoretical grammarian. The prohibition against the use of *like* as conjunction has a little more relation to actual fact. The word may be used as verb, as in "I like tennis"; or as a preposition, as in "You look like your father"; or as an adverb in somewhat archaic or popular speech, as in "You are not like to find him here." But in such a sentence as "He

looks like I did at his age," the usage is "now generally condemned as vulgar or slovenly."[1] The use of *like* as conjunction arises from the ellipsis of a fuller form, *like as*, as in the verse in the Psalms, "Like as a father pitieth his children," etc. In the simplification of this double conjunction, it happens that the second half is the one which has most generally persisted and the one which the formal grammarian would raise to the position of standard. But the ellipsis of *as*, leaving *like* for the simplified conjunction, is just as natural and just as reasonable, and so we find it in use side by side with *as*. "The use of *like* for *as*," says Professor Matthews,[2] "not uncommon in the Southern States [and Eastern and Western he might have added], has there always been regarded as an indefensible colloquialism; but in England it is heard in the conversation of literary men of high standing, and now and again it even gets itself into print in books of good repute." A colloquialism *like* as conjunction may be, but indefensible it certainly is not. It is first of all a widespread custom of the speech, it has arisen naturally and in the same way that *as* has, and unless one starts from the *a priori* position that there is only one legitimate form of expression for every idea in speech, it makes as strong a bid for favor as the conjunction *as*.

8. **Book Grammar**. The study of systematic, or technical, or formal grammar, as it is variously called, has grown tremendously in modern times. It is made a part of every elementary and high school course of in-

[1] New English Dictionary, s. v. *like*. The dictionary adds, however, that "examples may be found in many recent writers of standing."

[2] *Americanisms and Briticisms*, p. 16.

struction, and is even sometimes carried over into the college. Where in earlier periods the development of the feeling for the customary forms of expression was left almost entirely to natural habit, as developed in the home and in general social intercourse, in modern times, partly through the elevation of a more rigid standard of uniformity in usage, but mainly through the wide extension of popular education, the tendency is to make grammar as conscious and systematic a study as history or mathematics. This tendency began only in the middle and latter part of the eighteenth century. One of the earliest grammars of the modern type was that of Bishop Lowth, published in London in 1767. In the preface to this volume, the author declares that "the principal design of a Grammar of any language is to teach us to express ourselves with propriety in that language, and to enable us to judge of every phrase and form of construction, whether it be right or not. The plain way of doing this is to lay down rules, and to illustrate them by examples. But, besides showing what is right, the matter may be further explained by pointing out what is wrong." And so the greater part of Lowth's grammar is taken up with pointing out what he thinks to be right and what he thinks to be wrong in the writings of Pope, Dryden, Prior, and other authors of his period whom we now regard as classic. Grammars were also written, about this time, for the instruction of "young Gentlemen," and especially for the use of "the fair Sex," whose defective education in grammar, spelling, and composition is the subject of frequent satirical comment in the writings of the period. These grammars are significant of a

change which was coming over English education at that time. Formerly it had been regarded as sufficient school-master education for a gentleman if he was able to sign his name to a document, and many a lady famous in English history could not boast even of this accomplishment. Now, however, a new test of education or cultivation began to assume prominence, the test of ability to express one's self in the conventional or standardized forms of expression, both in speech and in writing. The tendency towards a fixed spelling and a fixed grammar went hand in hand, and so far has this tendency advanced that to-day deviations from the established and conventional orthography and grammar are the most convenient and the most frequently applied rough tests, if not of culture, at least of education and social position.

The importance which modern education has assigned to conventional grammar has naturally resulted in the development of what we have called "book grammar." Correct grammar having been made one of the essentials of correct conduct it was necessary to have books giving the rules of correct grammar. To supply this need those speakers of the language who were convinced that they knew what the correct grammar of the language was have provided such books with amazing abundance. These books are, of course, nothing more than the record of the customary use of the language as observed by the authors of them, for the grammarian has no more power of legislating in the rules of grammar than the scientist has in the physical laws of nature. Both simply record the results of their observation. The hold, however, which the records of the professed grammarian have ac-

quired over the average user of the language is peculiar. The grammarian merely records the social habits or customs of the speech of his community, and yet many persons who in other ways determine their social habits or customs by their own observation, give to the grammar the power of a final authority. The rules of personal conduct, for example, behavior at table, or the forms of politeness, are learned by the process of social intercourse; no one of any social experience governs his conduct by, or defers to, the authority of the rules of any book of good manners. For such he usually has the greatest contempt, preferring to follow the guide of personal experience and observation. But the customs of speech are also merely the regularized habits of the speech of a community. Why, then, should not the speaker depend as much upon the authority of his personal experience and observation here as in the other social relations of life? If the discussions of the preceding pages have been followed, it will be evident that it is the author's opinion that he should. Grammars are sometimes helpful in enabling a speaker or writer to broaden the field of his personal observation. But in the end, unless he is willing to become merely a blind follower of precept and authority, his own use must rest upon personal observation and choice. Book grammar is inadequate as a guide; it is even at times false and misleading. The best grammar ever written is only a skeleton of the speech of some past period. To set book grammar up as the test and the source of authority in language inevitably leads to a stiff, artificial, and unexpressive use of language. The real guide to good grammar, to good English in all respects, is to be found

in the living speech. And only he whose experience and observation of the living speech are sufficiently broad to enable him to employ it with perfect ease and confidence can be said to have realized the spirit, the idiom of the language.

VIII

CONCLUSION

In the discussions of the preceding pages a good deal has been said here and there concerning good English and bad English. It may be of advantage to gather together, by way of conclusion, the various threads of these discussions, and to endeavor to present some connected answer to the ever-recurring question, What is good English?

It is plain that the question of good English may arise with reference to any of the different sides of language. Thus the point to be determined may be one of sound, or pronunciation; of words, or vocabulary; or one of grammar in the narrower sense, the way in which the sounds and words of the language are united for the expression of thought. But the principles which govern the answer to all questions of good English, whether of pronunciation, or vocabulary, or grammar, are the same. The feeling which underlies the distinctions of right and wrong, of good and bad, is a general feeling for the language as a whole, and the threefold division that has been made is only of practical value as a convenient way of ordering the various kinds of detail which come up for discussion.

In the first place, there should be a clear understanding of the difference between "good English" and "conventional" or "standard English." Standard English

is likely to be good English, but all good English is not necessarily standard English. What, then, is good English? The purpose of language being the satisfactory communication of thought and feeling, that is good English which performs this function satisfactorily. Such a definition of good English, it will be observed, is purely utilitarian and practical. It defines good English only in the terms of its activity, without reference to any theoretical and abstract conceptions of its value or significance. Whenever two minds come into satisfactory contact with each other, through the medium of language, we have then, so far as each instance taken by itself is concerned, a good use of language. The rustic with his dialect, and in his own homogeneous dialect community, realizes as much the purpose of language as the most polished speaker in the "best society" of the city. Each expresses himself satisfactorily and is understood satisfactorily, and more than this language at its best cannot do. Our definition of good English is, therefore, very simple; any English that "hits the mark" is good English. To hit the mark in the center, it must express exactly what the speaker or writer wishes to express, in such linguistic terms as will convey to the hearer or reader exactly those impressions which it is intended that he shall receive.

When we come to analyze the situation a little more closely, however, we find that there are various kinds of good English, that the question of "bad English" usually arises when one kind of English is used in circumstances which require a different kind, when one has tried to hit the mark with the wrong arrow. Thus there is that form of English which is known as "popular

English." This is the speech of those who, usually through limited experience and education, are unacquainted with the usage which the community in general regards as the better social custom. Sometimes, as in the poetry of Burns, it is made the vehicle for literary expression. Usually, however, it is a purely colloquial speech. Naturally, the limits of popular English are not absolutely defined, but are largely a matter of opinion. The term usually carries with it some unfavorable connotations. Popular English is the "vulgar" English of the lower classes of society. But just who these lower classes are, just the dividing line between the upper and the lower, these are matters hard to determine. A positive test of culture, outside the dogmatic opinion of individuals, has never yet been discovered. Certainly it can hardly be said that the person who has received the conventional education is, by and for that reason solely, a more highly cultivated person than one who has not.

A second kind of English is called "colloquial English." This is the speech of the commonplace concerns of daily life and of less serious conversation, a speech freer and less conscious than formal speech, but not carrying with it the suggestion of illiteracy which characterizes popular speech. The degree of colloquialism which one permits, in one's self or in others, depends on the subject of conversation, on the intimacy of the acquaintanceship of the persons speaking, and in general on all the attendant circumstances.

A third kind of English is "formal or literary English." This is the English of public speaking, of more formal conversation, and of printed and written literature. It

varies widely in the degree of its formality, the style of a philosophic treatise being appropriately more formal than that of a light essay. There is also one manner of speaking for the pulpit and another for the lecture-platform, one manner for the judge in court and another for the stump orator. The line of demarcation between formal and colloquial English is not sharp, just as it is not between colloquial and popular English. The style of some authors or public speakers, for example, is decidedly more colloquial, more familiar, than that of others. With all, however, whatever the degree of formality, the dependence of the literary speech upon the colloquial speech of natural intercourse is necessary. It is from the colloquial speech that the literary speech has its vitality. If left to itself, its tendency would be to develop into a highly specialized and artificial form of expression — a special high-caste language for literature that would grow less and less real and expressive as it detached itself more and more from the colloquial speech in which the common human concerns of life and death find their most intimate expression. It is perhaps better, therefore, to speak of these three kinds of speech, popular, colloquial, and literary, not as three distinct and separate species, but rather as three tendencies of development of what is at bottom one speech, and that a popular speech in the sense that it comes directly from the experiences of men and women, in the immediate affairs of life. Language, as Walt Whitman says, "is something arising out of the work, needs, ties, joys, affections, tastes, of long generations of humanity, and has its bases broad and low, close to the ground. Its final decisions are made by the masses, people nearest the

concrete, having most to do with actual land and sea."

Each of these three tendencies of English speech has its appropriate uses. They are three kinds of arrows with which different speakers at different moments strive to hit the mark of good English. To hit the mark of the serious literary style, one does not use the arrow of the obviously colloquial speech, and still less of popular speech. To hit the mark in colloquial conversation, one does not use the arrow of the formal speech, nor, among cultivated persons, of the popular speech, unless indeed one is ignorant of the fact that the usages are regarded as popular by the person whom one is addressing. The popular speech naturally does not often come into conflict with the colloquial speech of polite conversation, or with the formal speech, since the characteristic of the popular speaker is his ignorance of the other forms of speech. For the same reason the speech of polite conversation does not, and need not, adapt itself to the popular speech when speakers of the two kinds come into contact with each other. Otherwise it is assumed "that a man of taste and ability will modify his use of language to meet the special requirements of the task proposed. He will have learned by study to distinguish between different tones and values in the instrument of speech, and will have acquired by exercise the power of touching that mighty organ of expression to various issues."[1]

It thus appears, if the above statements are true, that language which may be adequately expressive, and therefore good, under one set of circumstances, under a

[1] Symonds, *Essays, Speculative and Suggestive,* Vol. I, p. 267.

different set of circumstances becomes inadequately expressive, because it says more or less than the speaker intended, and so becomes bad English. One learns thus the lesson of the complete relativity of the value of language, that there is no such thing as an absolute English, but that language is valuable only as it effects the purpose one wishes to attain, that what is good at one time may be bad at another, and what is bad at one time may be good at another.

But something further must be said about that tendency of English which results in what is known as the conventional, or standard, English. It is not necessary to discuss here why mankind strives to formulate customs and habits into a fixed system. The fact itself is obvious. Through this natural instinct, as we may call it, in all our social customs, of daily manners, of dress, of morals, of speech, more or less regularized systems of conduct grow up. In language, each community, whether it is large or small, has a general understanding that this or that pronunciation, or, this or that rule of grammar, is the accepted standard, or conventional, one. This general understanding is arrived at in a purely voluntary, and often at first unconscious, way. Nobody imposes, nobody has the power to impose, any rules of standard speech on a community. As we have before pointed out, a rule is merely the statement of the general custom of a community. We might, consequently, speak of the standard popular, the standard colloquial, and the standard literary speech of this or that geographical community. Usually, however, the term is understood in a somewhat more limited sense. It is used to signify not merely the customary use of a com-

munity, but especially that use when it is recognized and acknowledged as the good use of that community. Any usage which is thus given its patent of respectability is regarded as standard use. It is customary use raised to the position of conscious legalized use. Of course the question of standard does not arise until there is some conflict of standards. As in the case of civil law, no customary practice is legalized, or standardized, until doubts are raised with respect to it, until some one attempts to depart from the customary practice. Then it is necessary to come to some agreement as to what shall be recognized as the accepted practice. In the case of civil law this is done either through the passing of a formal law by some legislative body, or through the decisions handed down by judges in passing upon disputed cases of customary and accepted practice in the dealings of men with each other. In matters of language the legal or standard practice cannot be so easily determined. Owing to the fact that there is no legislative body in language, no specified court of appeal, there is occasionally lack of agreement as to what shall and what shall not be recognized as the accepted use of the language. The government of the language is not as fully and as definitely organized as is the government of the business and other overt acts of men. In many instances, or rather in most instances, there is unanimity of opinion, and then we have an unquestioned and general standard use. The great body of English usage is thus made up of forms of language with respect to which there is practically no difference of opinion. Sometimes, however, due to various causes, such as the coming together of two speakers from two different geo-

graphical or social speech communities, instances occur in which there arises difference of opinion. In one community or one group, *he don't*, or *these kind of people*, or *I will*, for the future, will be accepted as the conventional, standard speech of the community. When they are used in this community or this group, they express their thought completely, and carry with them no connotation to the discredit of the speaker. In another geographical community, or by certain speakers within a community, these usages will be condemned as not standard, therefore as not satisfactorily expressive, and consequently as "wrong" or "incorrect." Who shall decide? Nothing can decide but the observation of custom. What is defended as customary use by a community, or even by a single speaker, to carry the matter to its final analysis, is standard, or conventional, or "right," or "correct," in that community or for that speaker. The question of correctness and incorrectness, that is, of standard, can only arise when a conflict of opinion arises, and this conflict can only be decided by such an extension of the field of observation of customary use, on the particular question, as will determine finally what the true custom is. That this is often a difficult matter is not to be denied; it is, however, only one of the many ways in which man is driven to an observation of his surroundings and to a continual adaption of his conduct to these surroundings. The importance of standard speech for the welfare of the community should also be recognized. It is only by the acceptance of general custom that speech can be made effective at all, and it is every speaker's duty to follow the best custom of the speech as he views it. Not idiosyncrasy, not singularity, should

be the ideal in speech, but a wise adjustment to and harmony with the general custom of the speech.

Standard, and in that sense conventional and "correct," English is consequently not altogether the same thing as good English. We have said that standard English is the customary use of a community when it is recognized and accepted as the customary use of the community. Beyond this, however, is the larger field of good English, any English that justifies itself by accomplishing its end, by hitting the mark. It is plain that standard English must continually refresh itself by accepting the creations of good English. It has always been so in the past, and so it is in the present. If the standardizing tendency were carried to its fullest extent, it would result in a complete fixity of language. If by following standard use one should have to follow customary use, it is plain that there could be no place in the standard speech for innovation — all would be summed up in the simple formula, Follow custom. Language would thus soon cease to be positively expressive; it would soon come to have no more personal value than an algebraic formula. But fortunately the standardizing tendency can never be carried out to its completest development, and opposed to it, or at least complementing it, will always be the ideal of good English in the broadest sense of the words. All that the standardizing tendency can do is to fix a vague and general outline of the language. This indeed is necessary and valuable to prevent a complete chaos of pronunciation, of vocabulary, and of grammar. But within these vague limits there is broad freedom. Poets and prose writers, lively imaginations of all kinds, in speech as in literature, are

continually widening the bounds of the conventional and standard language by adding to it something that was not there before. They must do so if speech is ever to rise above the dead level of the commonplace. "Justice of perception consists in knowing how and when and where to deviate from the beaten track." But deviation there must be, and the persons who attain an individual style in the use of language are those who seize their opportunities as they present themselves. To them the prime and necessary virtue in language is expressiveness, and, as complementing this, there should correspond on the part of the hearer or reader the willingness to receive the expression as fully as it was intended. Again, however, we insist on the continual application of the *test* of good English — it must be satisfactorily expressive. If it does not justify itself by accomplishing its purpose, if it shocks the prejudices, or the traditions, of the person to whom it is directed, or if it be unintelligible, if in any way it fails to secure a satisfactory and unhindered transmission of the thought, then to the extent of this failure it is bad English. And it is bad not because it has failed to satisfy any condition of theoretical, ideal excellence, any notions of standard, but because in the actual practice of the art of language it has failed to produce the result for which that art exists.

APPENDIX

The Old English Chronicle, Laud, 636.

The manuscript of which the opening page is reproduced above was written in the early part of the twelfth century. This is of course relatively late in the Old English period. Owing, however, to the literary conservatism of the writers and compilers of the *Chronicle*, the English which we have here differs little in style of handwriting and in the forms of language from the English of the two centuries preceding. The transcription of this passage, with interlinear translation, is as follows:

Of Britain the island is eight hundred[a] of miles long
1 Brittene igland is ehta hund mila lang

two hundred broad here are this
2 and[1] twa hund brad. And her sind on þis

island five languages English British
3 iglande fif geþeode, englisc and brittisc

Welsh Scotch Pictish
4 and wilsc and scyttisc and pyhtisc and

Latin First were inhabitants of this land
5 bocleden.[2] Erest weron bugend þises landes

the British These came from Armorica settled
6 brittes. Þa coman of armenia[3] and gesætan

southward Britain first. Then befell it that the
7 suðewearde bryttene ærost. Þa gelamp hit þæt[4] pyh-

Picts came from the south from Scithia (?) with long ships
8 tas coman suþan of Scithian mid langum[5] scipum

not many they came first to north Hibernia
9 na manegum. And þa coman ærost on norþ ybernian

there asked the Irish they there might dwell But
10 up, and þær bædon[6] scottas[7] þæt hi ðer moston wunian. ac

they would not them permit for they said the Irish
11 hi noldan heom lyfan, forðan hi cwædon, þa scottas

you may tho counsel teach know
12 we eow magon þeah hwaðere[8] ræd gelæron. We witan
another island here to the east ye may dwell if
13 oþer egland her be easton. Þer ge magon eardian, gif
will any one you opposes assist
14 ge willað. And gif hwa eow wiðstent, we eow fultumiað
may conquer. Then fared
15 þæt ge hit magon gegangan. Ða ferdon þa pihtas and ge-
acquired northwards southwards it had
16 ferdon þis land norþanweard, and suþanweard hit hef-
the British as before said for themselves
17 don brittas, swa we ær cwedon. And þa pyhtas heom
obtained wives of the Irish the condition would choose their
18 abædon wif æt scottum on þa gerad þæt hi gecuron heora
royal-kin ever woman side they held so long
19 kyne cinn aa on þa wif healfa. Þæt hi heoldon swa lange
afterwards then befell it after of years the course
20 syððan. And þa gelamp hit imbe geara rina, þæt
of the Irish some deal went from Hibernia to Britain there
21 scotta sum dæl gewat of ybernian on brittene and þer lan-
land some deal conquered was their leader Reoda call-
22 des sum dæl geeodon. And wes heora heratoga reoda ge-
ed this one they are named Dælreodi Six-
23 haten. From þam heo sind genemnode dælreodi. Six-
ty winters ere that Christ was born Gaius Julius
24 tigum wintrum ær þam þe criste were acenned, gaius iulius
of the Romans cæsar with eighty ships sought (i.e., visited)
25 romana kasere mid hund ehtatigum scipum gesohte
Britain was first afflicted with grim
26 brytene. Þer he wes ærost geswenced mid grimmum
battle much of his army he led astray then
27 gefeohte and micelne his heres forlædde. And þa he

[1] *and.* The manuscript has here, as frequently, an abbreviation for the conjunction. [2] *bocleden.* Literally "book-Latin," meaning the Latin of the learned classes. [3] *armenia.* The manuscript reading must be a mistake for Armorica, on the Continent. [4] *þæt.* Here again, as frequently, the conjunction þæt is abbreviated by giving only the first letter. [5] *langum.* The manuscript writes *langu*, but the stroke over the *u* indicates an abbreviation. [6] *bædon.* The manuscript has *bædo*, the *n* being omitted by mistake. [7] *scottas.* The Scotch in the early periods of English history were the inhabitants of Ireland or Hibernia. [8] *þeah hwaðere.* Equivalent to "however," altho literally the words are "tho whether."

In order to indicate the relatively fixed or "classic" character of the language of the Old English period, it may be interesting to point out the forms of this text as they would have been given two hundred years before the time at which the text was written. It will be observed that the changes are comparatively few in number and in themselves not very striking. In line 1, *ehta* would probably have been written *eahta;* in l. 5, *erest* and *weron* would have been *ærest* and *wæron;* in l. 6, *Brittes* would have been *Brittas*, as it is in l. 17; in the same line, *coman* and *gesætan* would have been *comon* and *gesæton*. By the time of this text, however, there was already entering some feeling of uncertainty with respect to the vowels of unstressed syllables. In l. 11, *forðan* in earlier Old English would have been *forðam;* in l. 16, *hefdon* would have been *hæfdon;* in l. 17, *cwedon* would have been *cwædon;* in l. 18, *gecuron*, an indicative form, would have been *gecuren*, an optative or subjunctive form; in l. 21, *þer* would have been *þær;* in l. 22, *wes* would have been *wæs*, and *heratoga* would have been *heretoga*, etc. These changes are very rarely of sufficient importance to obscure the grammatical relationships of the words. In popular speech doubtless the changes were much more extensive. The language of the *Chronicle* is conservative, literary Old English, such as was preserved in the seclusion of the monasteries and libraries of England. When this conservative literary culture was destroyed by the Norman Conquest and its consequences, the only English which was left was of course the popular, unliterary English, in which changes had taken place at a much more rapid rate. It is from this popular English that the language of the Middle English period is largely derived.

Chaucer's Pardoner's Tale.

(From Cambridge Univ. MS. G. G. 4. 27, fol. 306.)

This manuscript was written in the early part of the fifteenth century, probably within thirty or forty years after Chaucer's death. It was written by a professional copyist and is illustrated by means of a number of drawings representing the characters of *The Canterbury Tales*. The following is a transcription of all except the last four lines of the passage contained in our reproduction:

Here begynnyth the Pardonner his tale.

In flanderys whilhom dwellede a cumpaynye
Of yonge folk that haun*te*dy*n* folye,
As ryot, hasard, stewys, *and* tavernys,
Where as with harpys, lutys and geternys,
They daun*ce* *and* pleye at deis bothe day *and* nyght,
And ete *and* drynke also ovyr here mygt,
Thou*re* whiche they don the deuyl sacryfise
With inne that deuyls te*m*ple i*n* cursede wyse,
By super*f*luyte abominable.
Here othis been so greete *and* so dampnable
That it is gresely for to here he*m* swere.
Oure blyssede lordis body they to tere;
Hem thougte that Jewis rente hy*m* not ynough,
And eche of hem at otherys syn*ne* lough.

Letters which in the MS. are indicated by an abbreviation, usually a stroke above or below the place in which the letters belong, are printed here in italics. The capital I of the first word is part of the decoration. The following is a literal translation of this passage:

In Flanders whilom dwelt a company
Of young folk who practiced (haunted) folly,

As riot, hasard (gambling), brothels and taverns,
Where with harps, lutes and guitars,
They dance and play at dice both day and night,
And eat and drink, also, over their might,
Through which they do the devil sacrifice
Within the devils temple, in cursed wise,
By abominable superfluity.
Their oaths are so great and damnable
That it is grisly to hear them swear.
Our blessed Lord's body they dismember (to tere);
It seemed to them (Hem thougte) the Jews rent him not enough,
And each of them at the others sin laughed.

A phonetic transcription of the passage is as follows:

In flanderz hwilom dweled a kumpeniə
Of yuŋə folk ðat hêntedin foliə,
Az riot, hazard, stêwəs and tavernəs,
hwer az wiþ harpəs, lutəs and geternəs,
ðê dêns and plê at dês bôþ dê and niht,
and êt and drink als' ôvir herə miht
þûr hwiɛ ðê dôn ðə devil sakrifizə
wiþ in ðat devils templ' in kursed wîzə,
bi superfluitê abominablə.
hêr ôðəs bên sô grêt and sô dampnablə,
ðat it is grêsli for to hêr hem swêrə.
ûr blised Lordis bodi ðê totêrə;
hem þûht ðat jêwis rent him nət inûh,
and êɛ of hem at ôðerz sinə lûh.

The First Folio of Shakspere.

(Merchant of Venice, IV, i, 119–152.)

The First Folio of Shakspere was printed in the year 1623. The text of the *Merchant of Venice* in the First

Folio, which was the first collected edition of Shakspere's plays and which was made up mainly from earlier editions of the separate plays, was taken from a quarto edition published in the year 1600. Our passage represents, consequently, the form which printed literature took in the first quarter of the seventeenth century. Some of the spellings are noteworthy. In l. 122, *bankrout* represents the older spelling of the word, following French *banqueroute*, from which it was borrowed; our modern spelling *bankrupt* was due to the desire to indicate the ultimate etymology of the second element, from Latin *ruptus*, "broken." Shakspere probably pronounced no *p* in the word. In l. 123, *soale* and *soule* are spelt differently because there was a slight difference in pronunciation, great enough to justify the differing othography but not too great to make the pun seem forced. In Modern English *sole* and *soul* are not distinguishable in sound, altho the spelling still indicates that they are of different etymological origin. Note the cumbersome spelling, such as *keene*, *mettall*, *axe*, *beare*, *dogge*, etc. The spelling *dog*, beside Shakspere's *dogge*, offers an argument for the modern spelling *eg* instead of *egg*. Other words of this group have undergone the change, earlier *begg*, *legg* or *begge*, *legge*, etc., simplifying to *beg*, *leg*, etc. Instead of *inexecrable*, l. 128, many editors read *inexorable*. Note the inconsistent use of capital letters in the passage.

Autograph of Milton's Lycidas, ll. 165–193.

This passage from Milton's *Lycidas* is reproduced from a facsimile of the manuscript of Milton's minor poems preserved in the Library of Trinity College, Cambridge.

A literal transcription of the passage is as follows, words crossed out by Milton being printed in italics:

LYCIDAS.

Weepe no more wofull shepherds weepe no more
for Lycidas yor sorrow is not dead
sunck though he be beneath the watrie floare
so sinks the day starre in the Ocean bed
& yet anon repairs his drooping head.
and tricks his beams & wth newspangled ore
flams in the forhead of ye morning skie
so Lycidas sunk low but mounted *high* high
through the deare might of him that walkt ye waves:
where other groves and other streams along
wth nectar *pure* pure his oozie locks he laves
& heares *listening* the unexpressive nuptiall song
in the blest kingdoms meek of joy & love
there entertaine him all the S^{ts} above
in sollemne troops, and sweet societies
that sing, & singing in thire glorie move
and wipe the teares for ever frō his eyes
now Lycidas the shepherds weepe no more
henceforth thou art the Genius of ye shoare
in thy large recompence, & shalt be good
to all that wander in that perilous flood
Thus sung the uncouth swaine to th' oakes & rills
while ye still morne went out wth sandals gray
he toucht the tender stops of various quills
wth eager thought warbling his Dorick lay
and now the Sun had stretcht out all the hills
and now was dropt into *westren* the wester'n bay
at last he rose and twitcht his mantle blew
To morrow to fresh woods and pasturs new

Note the persistence of numerous awkward and uneconomical spellings in Milton's usage, e. g., l. 1, weepe, wofull; l. 3, sunck, watrie, floare; l. 4, starr; l. 10, deare; l. 12, heares, nuptiall; l. 15, sollemne; l. 23, oakes, etc. On the other hand, note how Milton, with his free attitude towards spelling, spells phonetically when he is so inclined, e. g., l. 10, walkt; l. 25, toucht; l. 27, stretcht; l. 28, blew, to rime with new.

In line 2, yor is an abbreviation for *your*, as in line 6, wth for *with*, in line 14, S^{ts} for *Saints*, and line 17, frō for *from*. In line 7 ye is for *the*, the symbol y being used instead of the older thorn, þ, the Old English representative of th. Of course Milton always pronounced this word as *the* not as *ye*, as is sometimes done by those who are not aware of the fact that the y is merely an orthographic substitution for the older þ.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

This Bibliography gives the titles of only one or two representative works under each head. The books named are such as will be found most useful to the student whose special interests are in English.

1. **General Treatises on Language**:

Strong, Logemann and Wheeler, *History of Language*, New York, 1891. This work is an adaptation and translation of Paul's *Principien der Sprachgeschichte.*

Sweet, Henry, *The History of Language*, The Macmillan Co., London, 1900. One of the Temple Primers; a brief but authoritative review of the subject.

2. **English Origins and Institutions**:

Chadwick, H. Munro, *The Origin of the English Nation*, Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 1907.

Dale, E., *National Life and Character in the Mirror of Early English Literature*, Cambridge, Cambridge University Press, 1907.

Gummere, F. B., *Germanic Origins*, New York, 1892.

3. **General Histories of the English Language**:

Lounsbury, T. R, *History of the English Language*, Revised Edition, New York, 1901.

Emerson, O. F., *The History of the English Language*, New York, 1897. In briefer form also as *A Brief History*, etc., 1900.

Toller, T. N., *Outlines of the History of the English Language*, New York, 1900.

Bradley, Henry, *The Making of English*, New York, 1904.

Jespersen, Otto, *Growth and Structure of the English Language*, Leipzig, B. G. Teubner, 1905.

Wyld, H. C., *The Historical Study of the Mother Tongue*, New York, 1906. This book devotes most of its space to phonetics and to the changes in the spoken form of the language.

Greenough and Kittredge, *Words and their Ways in English Speech*, New York, 1901. This book treats mostly of words, but it illustrates in its discussions many of the general principles of growth in language.

4. English Grammars:

Sweet, Henry, *A New English Grammar*, two parts, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1892, 1898.

Mätzner, Eduard, *Englische Grammatik*, two volumes, 3d ed., 1880–1885. Translated into English from an earlier edition by C. J. Grece, London, 1874.

Kaluza, Max, *Historische Grammatik der Englischen Sprache*, two parts, Berlin, Emil Felber, 1906–1907.

Horn, W., *Historische neu-englische Grammatik*, Strassburg, 1908.

Poutsma, H., *A Grammar of Late Modern English, for the use of Continental, especially Dutch, Students*, two parts, Groningen, P. Noordhoff, 1904–1905. This grammar is written in English, and is valuable to English readers for its large number of illustrations from contemporary English.

Among the numerous shorter treatises the following may be noted: Morris, *Historical Outlines of English Accidence* (1896); Whitney, *Essentials of English Grammar;* Abbott, *A Shakespearian Grammar;* Kellner, *Historical Outlines of English Syntax;* and for a general discussion of the methods and aims in the teaching of grammar, see Carpenter, Baker and Scott, *The Teaching of English*, New York, Longmans, Green and Co., 1903.

5. **English Dictionaries**, in the order of their completeness and reliability as works of scholarly reference:

New English Dictionary, also called *The Oxford Dictionary*, and sometimes from the name of its general editor, *Murray's Dictionary*. This work, which is now nearing completion, is written on historical principles and in the light of the best scholarship of modern times. It is a work of reference for the scholar, not the general public. It is published at the Clarendon Press, Oxford; the first volume appeared in 1888, and it is now (1908) in the letter R and in its eighth volume.

The Century Dictionary, and Encyclopedic Lexicon of the English Language, The Century Company, New York (copyright, 1889), in six volumes.

The Standard Dictionary, Funk and Wagnalls, New York, two volumes.

Webster's International Dictionary of the English Language, Springfield, Mass., G. and C. Merriam Company, 1904, one vol.

Skeat, W. W., *A Concise Etymological Dictionary of the English Language*, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1901. This is the best of the various forms of Professor Skeat's *Dictionary* and is a convenient and inexpensive work of reference.

6. **English Sounds**:

Sweet, H., *History of English Sounds*, Oxford, 1888. This is the most elaborate study of English sounds that has so far appeared. More elementary and dealing more with present English are the following two works, also by Mr. Sweet.

———, *The Sounds of English*, Oxford, 1908.

———, *A Primer of Spoken English*, Oxford, 1900.

Vietor, *Elements of Phonetics, English, French, and German*, translated and adapted by Walter Ripp-

mann, London, J. M. Dent & Co., 1899. This is an adaptation of the work of Professor Vietor entitled *Kleine Phonetik*, Leipzig, 2d ed., 1901.

Skeat, W. W., *A Primer of Classical and English Philology*, Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1905. This book treats of English sounds from the point of view of the relationship of English to other languages and from the point of view of English etymology. The various general histories and grammars of the English language all treat of English sounds more or less fully. Attention may be called especially to H. C. Wyld's *Historical Study of the Mother Tongue*, mentioned above.

INDEXES

INDEX OF SUBJECTS

[The numbers refer to pages]

a, different pronunciations of, 118–119, 131–134
Absolute possessives, 87–88
Accent, 50, 142–150, 199
Adjective, twofold declension of, 49–50
Adverbs, various forms of, 71–72, 309–311
Æthelred, 28
Æthelstan, 28
Alcuin, 215
Aldhelm, 215
Alfred, 23, 27, 215
Alphabet, relation to sounds, 113–115, phonetic alphabet, 115–122; reform of, 174–176
Angles, 20–21
Anglo-Saxons, their conquest of Britain, 19–22; Arthur's battles against, 20; civilization of, 23–27; jewelry and embroidery made by, 27
Apostrophe, origin of, 86–87
Arthur, 20
Artificial language, 40–43
Ascham, Roger, 245
Augumenting the English vocabulary, theory of, 235–248
Augustine, 23

Barrie, J. M., 284
Bede, 215, 251
Beowulf, 24
Berners, translation of Froissart, 252
Blickling Homilies, 251
Britain, origin of name, 15–16
Browne, Sir Thomas, 276–277
Brut, 226

Cædmon, 24
Carlyle, his etymologies, 262 and note
Caxton, William, 236–241, 252
Celtic words in English, 212–214
Celts, 15–16; in Gaul, 18
Chaucer, 13, 35, 80, 81, 140, 152, 153, 193, 195, 200, 225, 230, 232, 241, 251, 338–339
Cheke, Sir John, 245
China, use of English in, 38
Chinese, words borrowed from, 258
Chronicle, Old English, 26, 335–337
Cicero, 234, 251
Classification of languages, 44–48
Cnut, 28
Coleridge, 196
Colloquial English, 149–154, 327
Composition, 56–59, 187–193
Concord, value of in modern English, 304–308
Consonants, classification of, 109–110
Conventional English, 325–326
Copulative verbs, 311–313
Counter words as slang, 202–205
Cursor Mundi, 224
Custom in speech, 6–7, 124–125, 154–166, 325–334
Cynewulf, 24

Dangling participles, 306
Danish invasions, 27–28
Davies, Sir John, 194
Defoe, 195
Democracy, speech of, 7–8
Dialect, 139–141
Dictionaries, their authority, 162–167, 173–174
Differentiation in meanings of words, 186–211
Dutch, words borrowed from, 258

Early South English Legendary, 32
Echoic words, 185

Edward, son of Alfred, 28
Edward the Confessor, 28, 220–221
Egbert, 22
Elyot, Sir Thomas, 241–242, 252
English, compared with German, 53–54; as a "grammarless tongue," 59–62; in Middle English period, 74–75; as bilingual language, 220
Erasmus, 236
Esperanto, 40
Etherege, Sir George, 90, 288
Etymology, 260–267
Exeter Book, 26

Fine writing, 283–285
Foreign plurals, 296
Formal grammar, 320–324
Fox, George, 92
Freeman, E. H., 36, note, 222, note
French words in English, 219–233; late borrowings, 253–255
Function, how determined in modern English, 308–313
Functional change, differentiation of vocabulary by means of, 197–199
Function groups, 313–316

Gallomania, 31
Gascoigne, George, 246–247
Gender, 64 and note
German, English borrowings from, 255–257
Glanik, 40
Goethe, 249
Good English, 75–77, 325–334
Gradation, 186–187
Grammar, defined, 286; conservative tendency in, 287–289; logic in, 304–308; book grammar, 320–324
"Grand style," 276–278
Greek, 13–14, 46, 236
Grimm, Jacob, 50
Grimm's Law, 50–53, 99
Grocyn, William, 236

Hardacnut, 28
Harvey, Gabriel, 87, note, 242
Hengest, 20
Higden, Ralph, 224
Holmes, O. W., 100
Horsa, 20
Howell, 194
Hunt, Leigh, 132
Hybrids, 272–274
Hyphenation, 189

Idiom, 310–311
Imitation, 124–139
Indian, American, words borrowed from, 258
Indian, East, words borrowed from, 258
Indo-European family of languages, 44–47
Inflection, nature of, 56–59; in Old English period, 62–74; in Middle English period, 74–83; in the Modern English period, 83–98, 289–296; substitution in, 80–94; profit and loss in inflectional development, 94–98; synthesis and analysis, 94–96, changes in modern period, 289–297.
Inkhorn terms, 242–248
Italian, words borrowed from, 257–258

Japan, use of English in, 38
Johnson, Dr., 172, 268, 271, 285
Junian manuscript, 26
Jutes, 20–21

Kipling, R., 192

Lamb, Charles, 278
Language, history of, 3; function of, 4; as social custom, 5–7; of a democracy, 7–8; degeneration and progress in, 6–7; language and education, 8–9; literary and spoken language, 10–14, 149–154, 327–328; universal and artificial, 37–43; classification of, 44–48; synthetic and analytic, 94–96; laws of, 123–125
Larynx, 102–104
Latimer, William, 236
Latin, words borrowed from, 212, 214–217
Latinists, 244
Law in language, 50–51, 123–125, 151–152, 330–334
Layamon, 226

Liaison, 148–149
Lily, William, 236
Linacre, Thomas, 236
Literary English, 327–328
Lowell, J. R., 139, 199, 284

Malay, words from, 258
Metaphor, differentiation of meaning by, 193–197
Milton, 143, 165, 340–342
Mixed syntax, 316–320
Molière, 14
More, Sir Thomas, 236
Mutation plurals, 66–67

Nasal twang, 106
Nashe, Thomas, 242
Newspaper English, 284
Norman Conquest, 28–35; origin of Normans, 29; loss of Normandy, 30; influence of Conquest, 34–35; effect upon vocabulary, 221–222

o, different pronunciations of, 134
Obscure compounds, 142–148, 189–191
Old English, use of the term, 22
Organic sound changes, 141–154
Ormulum, 226

Parliament, first opened with English speech, 33
Paris, university of, 31
Pathetic fallacy, 196
Pennsylvania German, 140
Periods of English, 35, 54–55
Pettie, G., 248 and note
Philippines, English in, 38 and note; words borrowed from, 258
Phonetics, defined, 101; phonetic alphabet and transcription, 115 122, 174–176; phonetic laws, 123–124
Pidgin English, 38
Polysyllabic humor, 277–278
Popular English, 76, 150–154, 327
Prayer Book, 250
Printing, influence of on spelling, 172
Pronunciation, standard of, 154–166
Proportional elements of the English vocabulary, 267–269
Provincialisms in speech, 141
Purity in vocabulary, 34, 269–274
Puttenham, 247

Quakers, use of *thee*, 92–93

Renascence, 233–238
Resonance chamber, 104–105
Riley, J. W., 139
Robert of Gloucester, 224
Romans, in Britain, 16–18; Roman walls, 17; departure of, 18–19
Ruskin, John, 196, 262–263
Russian, words from, 258

Saxonists, 244
Saxons, 20–21
Saxon shore, 19
Scandinavian words in English, 217–219
Scientific vocabulary, 259–260, 278–279
Scott, Sir Walter, 228–229
Second shifting of consonants, 54
Shall and will, 293–295
Shakspere, 13, 90, 140, 161, 194, 200, 244, 249, 287, 339–340
Sidney, Sir Philip, 244
Slang, 199–211
Social custom, speech as, 6–7, 124-125, 154–166, 325–332
Sounds, the study of, 99–100; production of, 101–106; voiced and voiceless, 106–107; vowel and consonant, 107–109; alphabet and sounds, 113–115; changes of, 122–139
Spanish, words from, 258
Speech and race, 15
Spelling reform, 167–182
Spencer, Herbert, 270
Split infinitive, 298–300
Standard English, 154–166, 325–332
Subjunctive, use of, 290
Substitution, 80–94
Suffixes, development of meaning in, 192–193
Swinburne, couplets in his prose, 258

Talking through the nose, 106
Tennyson, Alfred, 164

Teutonic languages, 48–50
Tilly, William, 236
Trevisa, John, 224–225

u, different pronunciations of, 136–137
Urquhart, Sir Thomas, 40

Vanbrugh, 90
Vercelli Book, 26
Vergil, 234
Vocabulary, element of English, 267–268; purity of, 269–272
Voiced and voiceless sounds, 106–107
Volapuk, 40
Vortigern, 20
Vowels, classification of, 111–112

"Weak e," 120
White, R. G., 132
William the Conqueror, 26, 28–29; 221–222
Wilson, Thomas, 243
Word-accent, 50, 199
Word-pairs in English, 250–253
Words, study of, 183–184; creation of, 184–186; meanings of, 186–211; borrowing of, 211–260; profit and loss in borrowing, 275–283; order of, 297–301
World English, 36–40

INDEX OF WORDS

able, 229
adventure, 233
aeronaut, 255
aerostat, 255
age, 229
aggravating, 281
agreeable, 233
air, 229
à la carte, 254
alms, 215
ambuscade, 258
amiable, 233
amuck, 258
animal, 264
antic, 199
antique, 199
anybody else's, 316
apex, 264
apostle, 215
appendix, 296
armor, 232
arms, 232
as, 320
asparagus, 190
asphalt, 190
atheist, 273
aunt, 232
automobile, 260
awful, 202

balance, 261
ballast, 257
bamboozle, 209
bandanna, 258
bandit, 296
banner, 232
bantam, 197
barn, 190
baron, 232
barrens, 197
bask, 249
base-ballist, 274
battle, 232
battle-door, 92, note
bear, 208
beauty, 233
beef, 228
bifteck, 255
bishop, 215
bismuth, 255
blackbouler, 255
blende, 255
boghei, 255
bogus, 209
boil, 229
bombast, 257
bonus, 264
boom, 185, 258
boot, 232
booze, 208
boule-dogue, 255
boulingrin, 255
box, 194, 216
breath, 32
breeches, 66
brigg, 257
brimstone, 190
brock, 213
brogue, 214
broil, 231
brother, 232
bull, 208
bum, 238
butler, 257
butter, 216
by-law, 198, 218

cadet, 254
cahoots, 209
caisson, 255
calends, 216
calf, 228
calico, 197
call, 219
candle, 215
canoeist, 274
cap, 232
caprice, 254
captain, 232
carafe, 254
card, 229
caress, 254
carouse, 255
cast, 219
castra, 18
cat, 54
causeway, 190
cedar, 216
chair, 229
châle, 255
charity, 228
charm, 233
chartern, 257
chastity, 233
chauffeur, 255
cheese, 216
chef, 254
chemist, 273
cherub, 296
chest, 194
Chester, 18
china, 197
chivalry, 230
chump, 209
city, 228
clan, 214
clergy, 232
clerk, 165–166, 232
cloak, 232
cloister, 232
clown, 257
club, 255
coat, 232
cobalt, 255
cocksparrow, 58
coiffure, 254

cold, 54
collis, 52
colonel, 232
compound, 199
condign, 282
construct, 240, note
contortionist, 274
contract, 19
conversationalist, 274
coquet, 254
coracle, 214
cornus, 51
cottolene, 260
courage, 233, 254
course, 229
court, 232
courtesy, 230
courtliness, 231
cousin, 232
coward, 233
cowry, 257
crave, 218
crayfish, 191
creed, 215
cricket, 255
criterion, 296
cromlech, 214
crook, 208
croquet, 257
crown, 232
cry, 229
culinary, 163
cup, 216
cupboard, 190

dance, 232
data, 296
datto, 258
dead, 54
deaf, 54, 137–138
deal, 54
death, 32
debt, 178, 229
debut, 254
débutante, 227
decem, 51
demi tasse, 254
dénouement, 227
dens, dentis, 51
dentist, 274
desperado, 258
dessert, 254
didoes, 209
die, 219
dine, 231
dinner, 231
dipsey, 190
do, 54
dock, 258
dog, 32, 134–135
dog-cart, 255
dogma, 264
Doncaster, 18
doubt, 229
down, 213
driften, 257
drool, 208
drown, 219
druggist, 274
druid, 213
dry, 213
dschungel, 257
duchess, 232
duke, 232
duma, 258

ear, 195
ease, 229
educationalist, 274
either, neither, 138
elegant, 203
eligible, 282
elocutionist, 274
endorse, 282
engine, 229
England, 21, 22, note
English, 22, note
entrée, 254
essay, 257
excursus, 264
exemplary, 282
Exeter, 18
exit, 264
extra, 264

face, 229
fair, 203–204
father, 51, 232
feast, 231
fell, 51
female, 58
festoon, 254
fiancée, 227, 254
fierce, 202
fifoclock, 255
finger, 32
finish, 257
fiord, 258
fire, 200
fix, 211, note
fizz, 185
flannel, 214
floe, 258
florist, 274
flower, 229
flub, 209
flunk, 208
focus, 296
folklorist, 274
foot, 51
football, 255
four-in-hand, 257
foyer, 227
fresco, 258
fro, 219
fruit, 229
fungus, 264

galore, 214
gantlet, 258
gaol, 179
gape, 219
garage, 255
gar aus, 256
gazette, 254
genius, 264
genre, 227
gentleman, 257
geyser, 258
gingerly, 261
gingham, 258
ginseng, 258
glen, 214
Gloucester, 18
glucose, 260
goal, 257
golf, 257
gong, 258
good-by, 143–144
gossip, 190

grace, 231
graft, 206
grandee, 258
grave, 54
grimace, 254
groom, 257
grotesque, 254
grunsel, 143
guess, 33
guild, 33
guilt, 33
guitar, 254
guttapercha, 258
gymnasium, 296

habit, 254
hackneyed, 191
halten, 54
handicap, 257
happy, 219
hark back, 266
hasty, 229
haven, 219
hearth, 165–166
heimweh, 256
help, 54
hensparrow, 58
hiccough, 190
higlif, 255
hill, 52
hinterland, 256
hit, 219
hobo, 208
hocus pocus, 209
hold, 54
home, 255
honor, 230
horn, 52
horse, 194
hour, 229
hulk, 229
hull, 258
human, 199
humane, 199
humbug, 257
husband, 219
hussy, 190

I, 69, note
idiot, 265
ikon, 258
ill, 219
imperator, 50
incisive, 281
index, 264, 296
indigo, 258
industry, 242
inoculate, 279
inquiry, 166

jacht, 257
jockey, 255
jolly, 229
joust, 232
judge, 232
justice, 232

kail, 214
kake, 257
kalt, 54
katz, 54
ketchup, 258
kettle, 216
keycold, 188
kick, 206
kindergarten, 256
king, 32
kitchen, 216
knave, 54
knockabout, 257
knout, 258
kommodore, 257
kopje, 259

laager, 259
labor, 228
langue, 32
(er) *lauben*, 54
lawn, 153
lawn tennis, 255
leave, 54
legend, 164
lèse magesté, 256
lewd, 265
liebe, 54
lift, 257
like, 320
long, 208
loose, 219
loot, 258
lord, 144
lory, 258
love, 54
low, 219
lung, 33

machete, 259
mackintosh, 257
madam, 232
Magdalen, 145
magnanimity, 242
maidservant, 58
majestät's-beleidigung, 256
mandarin, 258
mangelwurzel, 255
manila, 258
manservant, 58
manteau, 254
marquis, 232
master, 232
matador, 258
matron, 164
mattock, 213
maturity, 242
menu, 254
mercy, 228
meter, 216
mile, 216
mill, 216
mischief, 265
mistress, 232
moccasin, 258
mollycoddle, 206
monger, 212
monist, 273
morgue, 32
mosey, 209
mother, 232
move, 229
muckraker, 206
musicale, 254
mutton, 228

napkin, 231
nation, 232
née, 254
niece, 232
nephew, 232
nice, 202
non compos mentis, 209

noon, 216
Norman, 29
nostril, 190
nurse, 257

oasis, 164
oblivious, 281
octopus, 163
odd, 219
odium, 264
oleomargarine, 260
omen, 264
onus, 264
onyx, 264
opera, 258
opium, 264
orangoutang, 258
orchard, 190
organ, 215
oust, 229
over, 54
ox, 228

palace, 254
panneguet, 225
paresis, 166
pass, 229
pastor, 264
pastry, 231
pater, 51
path, 131–134
patron, 164
pauper, 264
peace, 228, 232
peach, 205
peck, 229
pellis, 51
pemmican, 258
peremptory, 163
perfect, 177
perfume, 199
phenomena, 296
piano, 258
pibroch, 214
piquenique, 255
plaid, 214
plate, 231
plea, 232
plead, 232
plank, 209
pogrom, 258
ponche, 255
poodle, 255
pop, 185
pork, 228
porter, 257
portray, 232
potato, 258
pound, 212
power, 228, 232
prayer, 232
preach, 232
predicament, 281
premium, 264
present, 199
pretzel, 255
priest, 215
prince, 232
progress, 164
pronunciamento, 259
publicist, 274
pug, 197
punch, 257

quartz, 255

racial, 273
radium, 259
raglan, 257
rajah, 258
ransack, 219
realm, 232
reconcentrado, 259
recondite, 166
redingote, 255, 257
regal, 273
rekord, 257
relic, 232
rhum, 255
rind, 153
ritzen, 54
river, 229
roast, 231
robber, 257
rosbif, 255
rotten, 219
royal, 232
ruppee, 258
sad, 195
saga, 258
sandwich, 255
sap, 54
sauerkraut, 255
savior, 232
scant, 219
scare, 219
schaf, 54
scheck, 257
schedule, 163
schieben, 54
schiff, 54
schlafen, 54
schlips, 257
schmack, 257
scientist, 274
scrape, 219
seemly, 219
seige, 232
sergeant, 232
series, 264
service, 232
shale, 255
shall and will, 293–295
shamrock, 214
sheep, 54, 228
shillelagh, 214
ship, 54
short, 208
shove, 54
silvertip, 188
simmer, 185
sir, 232
sister, 232
sit, 54
situate, 240, note
sizzle, 185
skedaddle, 209
ski, 258
skidoo, 209
skill, 219
skin, 219
skipper, 258
skull, 219
sky, 219
slang, 257
sleep, 54
slogan, 214
sloop, 275

slough, 213
smoking, 257
snicker, 185
snide, 209
sobriety, 242
soil, 229
soirée, 254
soldier, 228
sound, 152-153
sozodont, 260
spalpeen, 214
species, 264
spectrum, 264
spenzer, 257
spondulix, 209
squalor, 163
square, 258
starboard, 190
state, 232
stein, 255
steppe, 258
steward, 257
stirrup, 144, 190
stocks, 257
stool, 220
store, 257
strata via, 17, 212
street, 17, 212
streik, 257
strenge, 22, note.
string, 22, note.
studio, 258
stupendous, 281
suit, 232
suite, 254
sullen, 195
supper, 231
sweater, 257
swine, 228

table, 229
table d' hôte, 254
taboo, 258
take, 219
tattoo, 258
taub, 54
tea, 258
technique, 227
telegram, 260
telegraph, 260
telharmonic, 260
temperance, 242
temperate, 282
ten, 51
tender, 257
tenuis, 51
terminus, 264
theil, 54
thin, 51
thou, 51, 89-93
thrall, 182
three, 51
thrive, 219
tigon, 51
tile, 216
till, 219
tin, 54
to, 54
toast, 255
tobacco, 258
tobacconist, 274
toboggan, 258
toilette, 254
tomato, 138
tongue, 32, 54
tonneau, 255
tooth, 51, 54
top, 257
Tory, 214
tourist, 274
town, 228
trainer, 257
tramway, 255
transit, 264
trek, 259
tres, 51
trimmen, 257
troll, 258
troupe, 179
tu, 51
tube, 136-137
tunge, 32
turf, 257
typist, 274
ugly, 219
ulster, 257
uncle, 232
unique, 281
universal, 282
use, 229
usquebaugh, 214

vaterland, 256
veal, 228
verst, 258
viewpoint, 188
viking, 258
villain, 261
villainy, 233
virtue, 233
vizor, 163
vodka, 258

wade, 265
wall, 212
waltz, 255
wampum, 258
weltschmerz, 256
whir, 185
whiskey, 214
whiz, 185
wielen, 212, note
wife, 262-263
wifman, 58, 144
wigwam, 258
Winchester, 18
window, 144, 189
wine, 212
woman, 58, 144, 19(
Worcester, 18
work, 228
write, 54
wrong, 219

zahn, 54
zeitgeist, 256
zinc, 255
zinn, 54
zoölogy, 278–279
zu, 54
zunge, 54

Date Due

Apr 24			
MAY			
MAY 19			
JAN 5			
JAN 5 '54			
JUL 13 1954			
DEC 11 1958			
DEC 16			
FEB 16 '60			
2. 3. '61			
NOV 3 1965			
NOV 14 '68			
DEC 11 '68			
JUL 30 '69			

Library Bureau Cat. no. 1137

ST. THOMAS COLLEGE
LIBRARY
WITHDRAWN
UST
Libraries

Krapp, George 29740

Modern English.